

## DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 042 052

24

VT 011 596

AUTHOR West, Leonard J.  
TITLE Programed Instruction for Decision-Making Aspects of Typing Tasks. Final Report.  
INSTITUTION City Univ. of New York, N.Y. Div. of Teacher Education.  
SPONS AGENCY Office of Education (DHEW), Washington, D.C. Bureau of Research.  
BUREAU NO BR-9-B-074  
PUB DATE Jan 70  
GRANT OEG-2-9-420074-1040 (010)  
NOTE 210p.

EDRS PRICE MF-\$1.00 HC-\$10.60  
DESCRIPTORS \*Cognitive Processes, \*Disadvantaged Youth, Individualized Instruction, \*Job Skills, Office Occupations Education, Program Development, \*Programed Materials, \*Typists

## ABSTRACT

Many office occupations open to typists require a skill level above that reached by the disadvantaged urban student who completes the present "clerical" training course. Conventional instruction in typewriting has tended to focus on manipulative factors whereas relatively recent research has shown that cognitive factors (decision making processes) bearing on attractive placement of materials on the page are substantially more important in accounting for skill at realistic typing tasks above the level of simple copying. In view of the need for new instructional materials emphasizing the decision making processes, a 541-frame programed instruction unit was prepared. The program is divided into 14 sections covering horizontal and vertical centering, simple and advanced table typing, business letters, and report typing. The program can be used by anyone who wishes to acquire or upgrade the cognitive skills taught by this program and can be used as a self-instructing unit. (Author/JS)

ED042052

Final Report

Project No. 9-B-074  
Grant No. OEG-2-9-420074-1040(010)

PROGRAMED INSTRUCTION FOR DECISION-MAKING ASPECTS OF TYPING TASKS

Leonard J. West

Division of Teacher Education  
The City University of New York

New York, N. Y.

January 1970

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a grant with the Office of Education, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. Contractors undertaking such projects under Government sponsorship are encouraged to express freely their professional judgment in the conduct of the project. Points of view or opinions stated do not, therefore, necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF  
HEALTH, EDUCATION, AND WELFARE

Office of Education  
Bureau of Research

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION  
& WELFARE  
OFFICE OF EDUCATION  
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED  
EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR  
ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF  
VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECES-  
SARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDU-  
CATION POSITION OR POLICY

# PROGRAMED INSTRUCTION FOR DECISION-MAKING ASPECTS OF TYPING TASKS

## Contents

	Page
Summary.....	3
Problem and objectives.....	4
Related research.....	5
Employment trends and typewriter use.....	5
Tasks performed by employed typists.....	5
Role of cognitive factors in total task proficiency.....	6
Proficiency levels at terminal stages of conventional training.....	6
Characteristics of conventional training for production typing.....	7
Objectives.....	8
Methods and results.....	9
Program scope.....	9
Role of the program.....	9
Role of the teacher.....	10
Placement rules and processes.....	11
Program organization.....	13
Program format.....	14
Program style and language level.....	14
Program trial.....	16
Conclusions.....	17
References.....	18
Appendix (copy of the program).....	

## Acknowledgments

The author wishes to express his appreciation to the chairmen of the Secretarial Studies Departments in two vocational high schools in New York City with large proportions of disadvantaged students: Mr. Jack Grossman, of Grace Dodge Vocational High School, and Mr. Goodwin Gilson, of Central Commercial High School. During the preparation of the programed materials for this project these gentlemen made many helpful suggestions to the author for revision of draft versions--in the interests of comprehensibility by students with low reading (and arithmetic) skills.

## Summary

Chronic complaints of shortages of typists and of inadequate skills among them pinpoint a particular need (a) to furnish an occupational skill to the disadvantaged urban student, who presently completes "clerical" training with little more than ordinary copying skill, and (b) to meet the anticipated need, during the 1970's, for "senior" typists.

Conventional instruction in typewriting has tended to focus on key-stroking and other manipulative factors, whereas relatively recent research has shown that cognitive factors (decision-making processes) bearing on attractive placement of materials on the page are substantially more important in accounting for skill at realistic typing tasks above the level of simple copying (business correspondence, tables, reports).

In view of the need to devote the bulk of page space in typewriting textbooks to materials for typing and of the sequential nature of the pertinent decision processes, instructional materials on decision processes were prepared in programmed form (for use independent of the standard typewriting textbook), in readiness for field trial among disadvantaged high school students. Revisions were made during program preparation on the basis of work done under controlled conditions with individual students. The resulting 541-frame (primarily linear) program uses 190 instructional pages (3 frames to an 8-1/2" x 11" page), with the model answer(s) to each frame appearing alongside the following frame in a down-the-page format. Responses, both composed and selected, are written by the student in the blanks that are provided. These responses represent the mediating decisions (machine settings) for a large number of illustrative typing tasks and, often, the processes by which the subsequent typing should be carried out. Upon completing work at any subsection of the program, the student can execute at the typewriter the sample tasks contained in the program and comparable tasks drawn from the conventional typewriting textbook, as well.

The program is divided into 14 sections (which can be used in a number of orders) devoted to: horizontal and vertical centering, simple and advanced table typing, simple and advanced business letters, report typing, and estimation of copy length for placement purposes. Each of the 14 sections is further divided into one or more subsections, each covering a logical unit of subject matter and of a size judged to be appropriate for one work session (of approximately 10-30 minutes). As self-instructional materials, the program should ideally be worked on outside of formal class meetings (i.e., as homework), freeing the teacher from the large amounts of class time ordinarily devoted to oral explanations about matters of placement of materials on the page and permitting maximum classroom practice at applying at the typewriter the concepts taught by the program. Outside of formal school situations, the program can be used by anyone who wishes to acquire or to upgrade proficiency at the cognitive skills taught by the program.

## Problem and Objectives

Typewriting is a skill in enormously widespread use, vocationally and personally. Yet, complaints of shortages of typists and of insufficient skills among them have been chronic (e.g., Wright, 1965). The problem is one of increasing the supply of competent typists. A major potential source of typists is the disadvantaged urban student, numbers of whom presently complete "clerical" training with little more than ordinary copying skills. The school drop-out and the adult job trainee and retrainee are also prominent candidates for typewriting training. Further, the U.S. Department of Labor's Occupational Outlook Handbook (1966-67 edition) has pointed in particular to a special need during the 1970's for "senior typists," who "generally perform work requiring . . . independent judgment; they may work from rough drafts . . . which contain technical material, or they may plan and type complicated statistical tables . . . ." The requirement is for skill at the typing tasks of real life, not at line-for-line copying of the perfect print of the typewriting textbook.

In the face of that requirement, complaints about insufficient skills suggest deficiencies in conventional instructional practices for typewriting. The conventional assumption is that keystroking and other manipulative factors are the major ones in proficiency at realistic typing tasks. Relatively recent evidence (see Related Research) strongly suggests that cognitive factors (decision-making behaviors applicable to placement, layout, or arrangement of materials on the page) outweigh manipulative ones in accounting for proficiency at realistic typing tasks, increasingly so as amount of training and level of skill increase.

The meaning of decision-making applied to typewriting can best be given by illustration. For business-letter typing, the typist must decide, before typing, how long the letter is (i.e., how many words, without counting word-by-word). That decided, appropriate side margins must be selected, and the appropriate distance from the top of the page for starting the letter must be determined. The same (horizontal and vertical) marginal questions have to be answered for table typing. In addition, following a decision on appropriate blank space between columns, the appropriate starting point for each column and column heading must be identified. In typing a report containing footnotes, footnote space must be estimated in advance in order to leave room for them at the bottom of the page. As the task grows more complex (e.g., tables with braced headings or with unequal intercolumn spacing, letters or reports containing tables, listings, and the like), the number of decisions and their complexity increase. These "placement" decisions determine the acceptability of the typed product and, as shown by the evidence (see Related Research), they are more consequential than mere keystroking in accounting for task proficiency. For some tasks, more time is spent in making these decisions than in actual typewriter operation. Further, mistrokes can be corrected by erasing; placement errors are rarely correctible.

The mistaken focus on keystroking and other manipulative factors in conventional typewriting instruction and the slighting of explicit practice in making placement decisions probably accounts in large part for employers' complaints about inadequate skills. In recognition of the need not met by available instructional materials, the activity reported here was devoted to the preparation, in readiness for field trial among disadvantaged high school students, of programed instruction materials dealing with the cognitive aspects of realistic typing tasks: with the pertinent placement decisions, not with keystroking. Should such materials, upon trial, prove to be effective, complaints about insufficient skills could be alleviated. Decision-making programed materials, side by side with typing textbooks containing large amounts of material for actual typing, would constitute a curriculum in accord with occupational and personal typing needs. The special need for senior typists could be met, and a marketable skill could be put into the hands of urban trainees, whose skills following conventional "clerical" training bear little relationship to actual job requirements above the level of addressing envelopes for mail order houses or filling in insurance premium notices.

### Related Research

The pertinent related research furnishes further details on (a) employment trends and needs and the extent of typewriter use in this country, (b) tasks performed by employed typists, (c) the role of cognitive factors in total task proficiency, (d) proficiency levels at terminal stages of conventional training, and (e) characteristics of conventional training for realistic typing tasks.

Employment Trends and Typewriter Use. National surveys by the U.S. Office of Education reveal that typewriting is a skill taught to more than half of all public secondary school students (Wright, 1965). Federal decennial census data (for 1960) showed that 2.29 million persons (3.5% of the labor force) were employed full-time as secretaries, stenographers, and typists (Rutzick and Swerdloff, 1962). Increases had been predicted (U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, 1963) and have, in fact, materialized. Occupational use of the typewriter, moreover, is not confined to clerical employment. A survey of the occupational history (over a 1- to 10-year postgraduation period) of 675 (mostly male) graduates of a collegiate school of business (West, 1961) showed that four-fifths of those in accounting, economics, marketing and management found typing skill to be at least moderately useful in their occupations. The enormous extent of vocational and personal use of the typewriter in this country is perhaps best suggested by the estimate by the writer of a business and economics column for a metropolitan newspaper (Porter, 1966) that 35 million Americans use the typewriter. The desirability of training that maximizes skill at real-life uses of the typewriter can hardly be exaggerated.

Tasks Performed by Employed Typists. Studies by Frisch (1953) of employed clerical typists (those without stenographic duties) and by Featheringham (1965) of the posttraining typing activities of those who had a personal typing course in high school agree in identifying the virtual absence of "straight copy work" among employed typists and show,

instead, that (a) the majority of the frequently performed typing tasks in real life call for the placement of materials on the page in accordance with certain conventions and for making decisions about appropriate placement (e.g., of columns and column headings in a table) and that (b) about half of all nonstenographic copy for typing is in longhand or in mixed type and longhand rather than in the perfect print of the typewriting textbook. Specifically, the recent study by Perkins, Byrd, and Roley (1968), which reported the typing tasks carried out by various percentages of office workers in the state of Washington, showed business letters, tabular material, final copy from rough draft or unarranged copy, manuscripts and reports, and the like, to be among the most commonly performed tasks. Such tasks or aspects of them call for making placement decisions, generally in advance of the actual typing.

Role of Cognitive Factors in Total Task Proficiency. The findings of numerous studies, including West (1960) and West and Bolanovich (1963) --summarized by Muhich (1967) and reviewed by West (1967, 1969)--are in agreement in showing enormous discrepancies between performance scores on the artificial school training task of straight copy typing and performance scores on the realistic activities of typing business letters, tables, and such display items as announcements and other work from rough draft copy. Both speed and errors on realistic tasks are a small fraction of speed and errors in straight copy work. The large discrepancies are patently attributable to the decision-making aspects of real-life typing tasks and to the different "set" adopted by the typist for "production" typing (i.e., of realistic tasks) in contrast to straight copy typing. Muhich's analysis of the components of production proficiency (1967), summarized in West (1969, Ch. 13), showed decision-making to play a larger role than machine operation factors in accounting for total task proficiency. Moreover, the role of decision-making increased as amount of training increased (1, 2, and 2+ years of formal typing training among high school and college typists). Illustratively, making one's own placement decisions made the work take 2-1/3 times as long, as compared to work from prearranged copy, requiring no decision-making but only machine operation. Such findings make it apparent that decision-making about matters of placement of materials on the page is at the heart of proficiency at realistic typing tasks.

Proficiency Levels at Terminal Stages of Conventional Training. The contrast between the long-time availability of large-scale data on the proficiency of typists at straight copy work, but the virtually complete absence of data on a comparable scale for realistic typing tasks, demonstrates that insufficient attention to the real objectives of instruction has characterized typing training in this country. The fallacy of the assumption that straight copy skills are highly related to proficiency at realistic typing tasks is as yet little known to (and certainly not acted on by) teachers and employers. Specifically, while ordinary stroking speed is appreciably correlated with speed at production tasks (r's ranging between .50 and .70), error correlations are negligibly small (in the .20's typically), as given in a review of all the existing evidence (West, 1969, pp. 329-334). Illustrative absolute scores show straight copy speeds of 40-60 words per minute (wpm), accompanied by speeds at

realistic typing tasks ranging between about 5 wpm and the middle 20's to low 30's (West, 1969, pp. 335-343). The most comprehensive study completed to date (Crawford, 1956) showed rates on realistic typing tasks by senior-college trainees of 10-13 wpm, accompanied by straight copy speeds in the 50's. Comparable data on a much larger scale have been collected by McLean under U.S. Office of Education Project 8-B-113 (scheduled for reporting by mid-spring, 1970), in which nearly 3,500 persons completing 1, 2, and 2+ years of formal typing training in high schools and community colleges were tested on a battery of realistic typing tasks. Numbers of examinees were unable to complete eight tasks (totalling about 600 words of typing) in five class periods (2 to 2-1/2 hours of actual typing time). That is, numbers of examinees who had completed one and more years of formal typing training performed below 5-wpm levels. Yet, their straight copy speeds were in the 20-40 wpm range.

The available data on proficiency at realistic typing tasks ("production" typing, as it is called) highlight the dominating role of decision processes over keystroking and other manipulative factors and reveal the inadequacy of conventional modes of training for production skill. The gross absence of norms or standards for production tasks (in contrast to the widely established standards for straight copy typing) further supports the inferences drawn here.

Characteristics of Conventional Training for Production Typing. A first step in determining the marginal space that will result in attractive appearance for many realistic typing tasks rests on an estimate of the number of words in the material. Such information is rarely available in the real world, but it routinely accompanies all typing textbook materials (presumably in order to permit rapid scoring of the work for speed). Because the textbooks routinely give word counts, the student is hardly ever required to make length estimates and is rarely taught how to do so. Faced with materials unaccompanied by a word count (as in many of the studies mentioned earlier), the typist often spends exorbitant amounts of time in making marginal decisions or makes wrong decisions in haste and ignorance. For the tabular work that is a large component of the activities of employed typists (Parkins, et al., 1968), conventional instructional practice is even less to the point. The majority of textbook tables specify intercolumn spacing and other placement details. Muhich's tally of the contents of five major typewriting textbooks (1967) showed an average of less than 1/3 of the textbook letters, tables, and drafts to be unguided (i.e., unaccompanied by placement instructions). The bulk of typewriting instruction appears to be aimed at the routine copying tasks of the lowest levels of clerical typing. The general picture is one of explicit guidance during training, in the face of the total absence of such guidance in real life. Conventional instruction is in sharp contrast to the principle established from empirical findings across many learning tasks that guidance is valuable if confined to small doses entirely restricted to the earliest stages of training (Bugelski, 1956; Stolurow, 1959). One cannot conceive of an employer asking his secretary to type "this 128-word letter" or to "leave 8 spaces between columns in this table." Yet, explicit instructions at that level pervade typing training.

Even when the textbooks provide bases for placement decisions (as in specifying margins for business letters of various lengths), they rarely go beyond that simple level, e.g., by considering factors other than the number of words. In any event, no explicit practice at decision-making is provided. Further, for any given type of task usually only one placement method is described, ordinarily a simple scheme appropriate to the simple textbook tasks, but one that breaks down on the more complex tasks carried out by employed typists.

Conventional training procedures start with exclusive attention to keystroking skills (with periodic attention given to such skills through late stages of training), followed by a slow introduction of realistic tasks (accompanied for months by explicit guidance on some or all matters of placement). Only at terminal stages of second-year training does one find practice activities that correspond more nearly to the work of employed typists: realistic copy unaccompanied by guidance on matters of placement. The general picture is one of too long a focus on the wrong things (manipulative skills), of a drag-out on the right things (decision making), accompanied by the supposition that being given the appropriate machine settings teaches one the processes by which those settings are determined. The typical deferment of fully realistic practice tasks until well into a second year of training is especially shocking in view of the fact that 70 percent of typing instruction in this country is for one year only (Wright, 1964, 1965).

The correlational evidence demonstrates the low relevance of copying skill to performance at consequential tasks, and the low proficiency levels at realistic tasks demonstrates the weakness of the conventional routes to proficiency at such tasks. The preferable rationale is one of earlier teaching of the cognitive components that dominate production typing skill, followed by extensive practice at unarranged materials, to which the learner applies the decision processes learned earlier. Under such a rationale, performance at realistic tasks after one year of training might be little below and sometimes even equal or exceed that following two years of conventional instruction.

### Objectives

The rationale just expressed could not be implemented by modification of existing typewriting textbooks without extending them to a length that would be uneconomic. Textbook page space is needed for materials for typing. The substantial amounts of practice (and therefore page space) needed to master the cognitive aspects of typing tasks can best be furnished by separate materials. The sequential nature of the decision processes pertinent to planning the layout of any given typing task point to materials in programed form as most desirable. Even more consequential: "programed instruction" permits each student to progress at his own rate and furnishes immediate feedback for responses. Further, since such materials are intended to be self-instructional, study of the materials outside of class would permit maximizing class time devoted to application of the placement concepts taught by the program to actual typing tasks--rather than to the large amounts of oral teacher explanation of matters of placement that would otherwise be required. Another

possibility is that, with programed decision-making materials available, the typing text could be divested of its guidance features, thereby reducing its length and its cost.

Accordingly, the proximate objective of the present work was to prepare, in readiness for field trial among disadvantaged high school students, "Programed Instruction for Decision-Making Aspects of Typing Tasks." The ultimate objective was to contribute to remedying the central deficiency in conventional typing training and, thereby, to better satisfy employment needs by furnishing a marketable occupational skill to disadvantaged urban students. A by-product objective is the upgrading of typing skills to satisfy the predicted need during the 1970's for senior typists.

### Methods and Results

Strictly speaking, the "Result" of this project is the instructional program contained in the appendix immediately following the body of this report. However, the processes by which it was developed and its descriptive characteristics can most conveniently be described jointly. Since the programed materials deal only with decision processes and not with actual typing, the manner in which programed work should be tied to subsequent typing and the role of the teacher in this regard are included. Treated in turn are: identification of the scope of instruction, the role of the program and of the teacher in the acquisition of "production" typing skill, identification of optimum placement rules and processes, organization and packaging of instructional content, selection of an appropriate programing style, format, and language level, and review and tryout during program preparation.

Program Scope. Earlier studies (see Related Research) showed that business letters, tables, and reports constitute the major classes of life uses of the typewriter. In fact, other than purely clerical tasks (such as envelope addressing, form-letter copying, form fill-ins, invoice typing, and such trivia as telephone messages), letters, tables, and reports embrace the majority of life uses of the typewriter. At least the processes and concepts applicable to those three classes of tasks include those found in other tasks. Accordingly, the cognitive or decision processes that apply to page placement and machine settings for business letters, tables, and reports make up the content of the instructional program. "Reports" are taken to mean, broadly, not only items like this project report, but also any prose matter for which ideal placement varies with length (e.g., a several-paragraph announcement for posting on a bulletin board). Applicable to such brief "reports" and to business letters is advance estimation of the page space required; so "estimation of copy length" was also included in the instructional program. In keeping with the finding of large amounts of longhand copy in the work of employed typists, significant amounts of the programed materials to which placement decisions are to be applied are in longhand.

Role of the Program. It was not the intent to preempt the functions adequately served by standard typewriting textbooks, but rather to fulfill vital training requirements not met or not adequately met by conventional training materials. The program is not a repository of practice

materials for typing, but a vehicle for furnishing practice at the mediating (internal, "mental") responses that must intervene between perception of the raw materials and the execution of those raw materials into finished form at the typewriter. Given something to type, the typist must decide where to set the margins before operating the typewriter's margin-setting mechanism. Using that example as an instance, the program teaches where margins should be set, not how to set them. The typing textbook contains business letters for typing; the program does not. It says, instead: "Assume a business letter of 117 words. In your size of type the left margin should be set at \_\_\_\_\_ and the right margin at \_\_\_\_\_. The date should be typed on line \_\_\_\_\_." In the same fashion, the program teaches the adjustments in vertical placement that should be made when a letter contains additional elements (e.g., an "attention" line). But it does not explain what an "attention" line is. The conventional typing textbook should be referred to for such information, before dealing, in the program, with the effects of such an item on letter placement. The program deals with matters of placement, with mental decision processes that apply to marginal and other machine settings for letters, tables, and reports and, when necessary, with conventions of format. The sections of the program devoted to tables necessarily include dozens upon dozens of miniature tables or portions of tables in order to furnish the student with many opportunities to specify the appropriate machine settings. The decisions about placement of materials on the page are the heart of "production" typing, and the programmed materials focus on those placement decisions.

Role of the Teacher. The placement decisions "mediate" (occur in the middle) between perception of the overt stimuli of the raw copy materials and the overt responses of actual typing. For efficient learning, all three elements (overt stimuli, mediating placement decisions, and overt typing responses) must be tied close together in time. The programmed materials provide the first two elements (stimuli and mediators) in close temporal contiguity. But the third element, actual typing, is entirely absent from the program. The student who has access to a typewriter while working on the program can immediately follow his program responses with pertinent actual typing, often frame by frame, thus meeting the requirement of close temporal contiguity between making the placement decisions and executing the typing. But for the student who works on the program at home and has no access to a typewriter until the next day in class, a long time interval intervenes. The student who comes to class unable to type has not "forgotten" his homework responses. Instead, he has not yet had an opportunity to tie those responses close in time to actual typing. For that reason, especially for trainees of low ability, the teacher in class should lead students step by step through the actual typing of illustrative tasks, using the program's concepts and processes. In that way, the pertinent mediating processes are tied close in time to overt typing responses. When the program provides materials pertinent for actual typing (as in the sections on tables), those materials should be used. Then one should proceed to the typing of full-scale tasks from the typing textbook. For practice materials not contained in the program (e.g., business letters), the program's mediating processes should be applied step by step to the actual typing of textbook materials.

Placement Rules and Processes. Numerous placement procedures have long been included in typewriting instruction, variously represented in existing typewriting textbooks. The bases for the ones selected (or invented) for use in the program can best be described by example. The typing textbooks of one major publisher prescribe "the backspace method" of table typing; another publisher prescribes "arithmetic." Neither method is optimally efficient for any and all tables. Backspace methods are most convenient for simple tables; arithmetic methods are efficient for some aspects of most tables; for all except the simplest tables, a combination of arithmetic and spacing methods is optimally efficient. However, any one typewriting textbook (or teacher, one supposes) tends to focus on one and only one mode of table placement, apparently with the thought that teaching students more than one way to do a certain thing "confuses" them. Possibly the one-method textbook treatment is deliberately intended as a sales feature that permits distinguishing the book from competing textbooks. Also, insofar as arithmetic methods of table planning require petty arithmetic, backspace methods might be thought preferable for students with arithmetic deficiencies and, therefore, in textbooks aimed at such students. In any event, in the desire to meet all levels of student ability and, more important, to provide methods for typing any and all tables, both backspace and arithmetic methods of table planning are taught in the present program. The methods are contained in separate sections of the program, applied to simple tables. A later section on advanced table typing invokes the use of both methods, as applicable, for the sake of maximum efficiency and speed in planning and executing the typing.

The foregoing instance of table typing illustrates one major criterion for program content: flexibility, adaptability to various levels of student ability and to various task-difficulty levels. Another such instance is the treatment of vertical placement procedures for business letters. Some textbooks teach a "moving" dateline: the position of the date varies with letter length, and distance between date and inside address is fixed. Other texts prescribe date placement a fixed distance from the top of the page regardless of letter length; distance between date and inside address varies with letter length. Presumably, both "moving" and "fixed" datelines are used by employed typists. Accordingly, the present program teaches both methods: branched, so that the teacher (or trainee) can elect one of the two methods. If desired, the second method can be introduced immediately after the first one or after any desired interval following experience with the first method.

Typing textbooks also vary in the precision of their letter placement schemes. Some are fairly gross; others, quite fine. The scheme taught in the present program is one that leads to vertical placement that will rarely, if ever, depart from perfect placement by more than a small fraction of one inch. At the same time, as attested to by users,<sup>1</sup> it is much

---

<sup>1</sup>As of the publication of the present report, the instructional program prepared under this project is at the half-way mark of field testing in three New York City high schools (under New York City, Board of Education, Business Education Proposal No. 1, 1969-70). A report on that field test will be available in the fall of 1970. Participating teachers have reported to the author their special satisfaction with the letter-

simpler than the methods found in the leading typewriting textbooks. The applicable algorithm (see Frame 10-11 or Frame 10-24 of the program) is contained in two readily memorized sentences that free the typist from the need to refer to any table of marginal instructions.

Another instance of flexibility--this one, mandatory--results from the existence of two common sizes of type (pica and elite). The proper objective of typewriting instruction is not school use, but life use. Since the size of type that might be encountered in lifetime use of the typewriter cannot be predicted in advance, an early section of the program teaches the two sizes and furnishes a little practice in using both sizes--verbally, in the program. Thereafter, with occasional exceptions, the learner makes program responses applicable to the size of type on his present typewriter.

Still another instance of flexibility is the section on "Advanced Table Typing." Its subsections deal with separable aspects or varieties of tables, from which the teacher or trainee can make a selection, depending on student ability, level of proficiency sought, and length of course. That section and the one on "Advanced Business Letters" include matters that go beyond what is contained in most nonspecialized typewriting textbooks, extending into some rather demanding "senior" typing tasks. The section on "Manuscript and Report Typing" is at a somewhat more professional level than the treatments included in most typewriting textbooks and might be expected to be of immediate interest to the college or college-bound student. Finally, the section on "Estimation of Copy Length and Centering of Estimated Materials" provides something entirely absent from current typewriting textbooks: explicit procedures for making very close estimates of word length and of number of typed lines required--in advance of actual typing. The estimation procedures have been standard in transcription training of stenographers, but their equal applicability to typewriting seems not to have been appreciated in conventional typing instruction. The gross "judgment" methods occasionally mentioned in typewriting textbooks are so vague as to be virtually meaningless. Reasonably accurate "eye judgment" probably follows from large amounts of experience at more explicit estimation guidelines and might not be a viable initial tactic for trainees, at least not for ones of limited abilities.

A final characteristic that pervades the entire program is the objective of greater precision in placement than is commonly sought in conventional instruction or attained by conventionally taught trainees. Popular opinion to the contrary, on some issues it is just as easy to be just right as approximately right; on other issues, very little extra effort can lead to typed products that have the visual elegance of print. It is, after all, probably the haphazard appearance of some typing that is a significant part of employers' complaints about insufficient skills.

---

placement scheme and the quick success of students in using it rapidly and skillfully. Interim testing of these students revealed virtually perfect vertical placement of letters by nearly all of them.

Program Organization. The organization and "packaging" of the program have already been partly described. For the purposes of immediate, more detailed discussion the program's contents are listed below.

<u>Section</u>	<u>Topic</u>	<u>No. of Frames</u>	<u>No. of Pages</u>
1	Centering at the typewriter	19	7
2	Horizontal centering of single lines	46	15
3	Vertical centering	34	12
4	Vertical centering of simple tables	37	13
5	Tables without column headings (backspace method)	40	14
6	Tables with column headings (backspace method)	26	9
7	Tables without column headings (arithmetic method)	22	8
8	Tables with column headings (arithmetic method)	31	11
9	Advanced table typing	105	36
10	Vertical margins for business letters	34	12
11	Horizontal margins for business letters	22	8
12	Advanced business letters	40	14
13	Estimation of copy length and centering of estimated materials	45	16
14	Manuscript and report typing	<u>40</u>	<u>14</u>
		541	190

The long, 105-frame section on advanced tables has its own table of contents and is formally divided into 8 subsections. The other 13 sections, as shown above, range from 19 to 46 frames, all but the shortest of which (Sects. 1 and 11) have one or more intermediate "stopping points," thus providing a series of single assignments, each of which can be completed in from 10 to 30 minutes. The sections may be used in a number of orders: e.g., letters before or after tables, reports before or after letters or tables, and so on. In short, the program consists of a comprehensive curriculum from which selection can be made for trainees of varying ability, for various instructional objectives, in courses of various lengths. Since each section begins on a new page, it is readily possible to package selected sections for particular trainees or training objectives: e.g., simple centering (Sections 1-3), simple tables (Sections 4-6 or 4, 7-8 or 4-8), simple letters and tables (Sections 10-11, 4-6 or 10-11,

4, 7-8), simple and advanced letters Sections 10-12), copy estimation and advanced letters and/or report typing (Sections 13, 12 and/or 14), etc.

Program Format. Exclusive of front matter each of the 190 (8-1/2" x 11") program pages contains 3 frames. Each frame is confined within a 3-1/4" x 5" area, bounded by rules. In the present version, a down-the-page format is used. That is, model answers appear alongside (to the left) of the following frame. With a down-the-page format, the eye can readily stray to the model answer in advance. However, the uniform alignment of frames on all pages permits an alternative, turn-the-page format that would prevent inadvertent "cheating." Advance recourse to answers would require deliberate page turning. Down-the-page format is more economical of space, however, if frame depth varies with frame content. For example, the majority of the frames in the present program do not use the full 3-1/4" depth allotted. Thus, many pages could have been formatted 4, 5, or even more frames per page. However, such a format would require the facilities and expertise of a professional printer. The present program was duplicated for field trial by multilith process at a university duplicating service.

When judged helpful and appropriate, model answers are accompanied by an explanation, most often when arithmetic is involved. For example, a frame might require the trainee to specify the left margin setting in a table that is 50 spaces wide. The model answer, with the applicable arithmetic shown after it, appears (for elite type) as: 26 [1/2 of (102 - 50) = 52/2 = 26]. By that tactic, corrective information for wrong answers is furnished to the trainee.

Trainee responses in the program are overt; he is asked to fill in blanks. To permit these longhand responses, blank length is two elite spaces for each longhand character; e.g., if a blank calls for the 6-letter word double as a response, the blank for that response is 12 elite spaces wide. Sufficient vertical space for longhand is provided by the routine use of 1-1/2 vertical spacing of frame lines. Single spacing is used only for lines that do not contain response blanks and, even then, only when space was at a premium.

Program Style and Language Level. Branching is provided for horizontal margin setting for business letters in pica and elite type and for vertical placement of letters using a moving vs. a fixed dateline. With these exceptions, the program is a linear one. Branching, in the sense of routing those who make errors through remedial frames before they return to the main track, was not employed--partly because an already long program would have been made immensely and unmanageably longer. Mainly, however, branching programs do not readily lend themselves to the composed responses that are preferable to selected ones. In life, the typist does not choose from a small number of listed options; he must "compose" a response drawn from an unspecified number of possibilities. In this program selected (multiple choice) responses are used only when it was judged necessary to limit the class within which the response should fall. To illustrate with a response furnished by a trial subject to an early-draft frame: to the item "An up-and-down direction is \_\_\_\_\_,"

the response was "Like this (gesturing with her hand)"--despite an earlier frame that used the terms "horizontal" and "vertical." Accordingly, the frame was revised as: An up-and-down direction is \_\_\_\_\_  
(horizontal/vertical)

(The student chooses from among options given in parentheses below the response blank.) With many exceptions of the sort just illustrated, the program is primarily a composed-response one. To recapture some of the benefits of remedial branching--or, strictly speaking, to provide sufficient practice for those who make errors--every concept and process in the program appears and reappears several times, at intervals, in various settings. Nothing is said or done once and only once. The program has substantial redundancy of process and concept, but not of identical responses to identical stimuli.

After each little subsection of the program, of which there are 48, there is "A little TEST." Each of these consists of uncued, unprompted, unguided materials designed to assess the extent to which the trainee has learned from the program.

Concerning language level or comprehensibility of the program verbiage, the program is intended for those with the reading deficiencies characteristic of the urban disadvantaged student. However, the usual indices of reading level may not be particularly pertinent; nor is it clear how such indices should be applied to prose that contains blanks or to frames containing columnar displays (in the sections on tables) that are not, in the usual sense, read for meaning. Besides, conceptual load, rather than language attributes, might be the more important considerations in programs of this kind. These reservations notwithstanding, syllabic intensity (mean number of syllables per word) and mean number of words per sentence (exclusive of blanks and of displays not to be read for meaning) were computed for every fifth frame in each of the 14 sections of the program, beginning with frame number 5 in each section. For the sample of 105 frames, mean number of syllables per word was found to be 1.37 (SD = .10), which is at the borderline between 7th- and 8th-grade levels, according to Fry (1968). Mean number of words per sentence was 15.2 (SD = 5.1), which is at low 6th-grade levels, according to Fry. Relatively little can be done to reduce the syllable count because of the inevitable abundance of such polysyllables as: horizontal, vertical, centering, typewriter, backspacing, intercolumn, underscore, et al. At the possible cost of some choppiness, sentence length is probably reducible by converting into separate sentences ones that presently consist of a series of clauses separated by semicolons or commas. For example:

As shown above, the typed matter has  $5 + \underline{\quad} + 5 = \underline{\quad}$

spaces, and the ICs contain  $3 + \underline{\quad} = \underline{\quad}$  spaces, for a

total in the longest line of  $\underline{\quad}$  spaces.

could be revised (turning one sentence into three) as:

As shown above, the typed matter has  $5 + \underline{\quad} + 5 = \underline{\quad}$

spaces. The ICs contain 3 + \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ spaces. The total

in the longest line is \_\_\_\_ spaces.

Revisions of that sort would reduce the formal measure of sentence length. Whether such changes have any effect on readability is another question.

For the sample of 105 frames, average frame length was 70.9 words or 4.7 sentences. The shorter (1- or 2-sentence) frames typically contain 1 to 3 response blanks. More often, longer frames containing more response blanks were necessary in order to "track" the learner through the sequence of steps or decisions applicable to some piece of work.

Syllabic intensity is an indirect and, in fact, a weak index of vocabulary level. For example, its correlation with word frequency for the vocabulary of written business communication was found to be -.08 (West, 1968). However, some measure of protection against the use of too difficult a vocabulary in the frames was furnished by the trial procedures employed during program preparation and by the editorial suggestions of consultants, described next.

Program Trial. Draft frames were typed on 3" x 5" cards, with model answers on the reverse side. A number of students from two high schools were paid by the hour for serving as trial subjects on draft versions of the program. Each worked with the writer individually, reading aloud and filling in blanks orally, without access to model answers. Oral reading of such materials is substantially more difficult than silent reading, but pauses and stumbling in the reading served to identify awkwardnesses in sentence structure, vocabulary difficulties, and, most important, errors in step size, in the rate at which prompts or hints were "vanished," and in the frequency of review and summary frames. Revisions were made accordingly and the revised version tried on a new subject. Subjects for the early sections had had no typing instruction whatever and were clearly at a disadvantage in relation to intended users of the program, who would have at least two or three months of typing instruction before entering the program. Later sections of the program were tried on subjects whose earlier formal typing instruction covered the matters taught in earlier sections, but not those treated in the sections for which they served as trial subjects. A minimum of two subjects, usually three, worked through successive versions of Sections 1-8, 10-11. It was not possible to secure from the high schools persons whose earlier training extended far enough to permit their use as trial subjects for the latter parts of Section 9 (advanced table typing) or for Sections 12-14. The high schools within easy traveling distance of the writer's office serve a disadvantaged student body for whom a decidedly modest clerical-typing curriculum is provided. With one exception, trial subjects were judged to be youngsters of below-average intellectual capacities (perhaps 85-95 IQ). The one exception was a shorthand major of Puerto Rican extraction who spoke accented English and who whizzed through portions of the difficult Section 9 almost as fast as she could read and nearly faultlessly. If that sample of  $N = 1$  is representative of shorthand majors, the program is an easy one for those whose intellectual capacities extend through shorthand learning.

Some idea of vocabulary revisions may be gained from an illustrative instance. Version 1 (from a frame on horizontal centering): ". . . the extra space may be put either at the left or at the right. It does not matter on which side you put it--so long as you are consistent." Version 2 (because the trial subject did not know the meaning of consistent): ". . .--so long as you always put it on the same side each time: always at the left or always at the right."

Far more striking than deficiencies in vocabulary exhibited by trial subjects were their perceptions about learning from written materials. Each subject read (i.e., made oral speech sounds) with unflinching ease. One, in fact, read with a dramatic flair that would lead one to suppose she were auditioning for a role in a play. Yet, at the start, errors were rife; subjects often could not respond to the blanks or responded incorrectly. Patient questioning by the author, on a sentence-by-sentence basis in a rereading of the first few frames, routinely elicited an "Aha" phenomenon from subjects: "Oh, you mean I 'sposed' to pay attention to what it says?" or "I get it, I have to learn what I'm reading." With that fundamental understanding clarified, matters improved substantially, and large numbers of right answers were forthcoming--however slowly for some subjects and some frames. The matter is mentioned because it is provocative for any instruction of disadvantaged students that requires reading. For some, the difficulties might lie, in some part at least, in attitudes toward reading, in their perceptions of the purposes of reading, rather than in incapacity. To whatever extent attitudes and perceptions may be consequential, a chief role of the teacher who uses programmed instruction materials like these is a motivational one.

Following program revisions based on the responses of trial subjects working with the author individually and reading orally, the program sections were edited by two chairmen of Secretarial Studies Departments in two New York City vocational high schools serving disadvantaged students. Their suggestions for stylistic revisions (vocabulary, sentence structure, clarity) were nearly always accepted and further revisions made accordingly. Less frequently--in fact, rarely--accepted was advice to drop completely the treatment of some matters that go beyond what is presently incorporated into the typing curricula of those schools. The author's hope is that with curricular materials addressed to the heart of the proper objectives of instruction, rather more can be accomplished than has been characteristic.

### Conclusions

The project was devoted to the development of programmed curricular materials for typewriting, in readiness for field trial among disadvantaged high school students. The resulting 541-frame, 190-page PROGRAMED TYPEWRITING materials appear in the appendix to this report, immediately following the References.

In accordance with empirical findings about the greater importance of cognitive over motor factors in accounting for proficiency at realistic typing tasks and in the light of the absence of pertinent training materials in conventional instruction, the present materials are devoted entirely to decision processes that determine attractive placement of the

typed product on the page. They are intended as an adjunct to, not a replacement for, the conventional typewriting textbook.

The materials are in programmed form in order to individualize the instruction, to provide numerous, carefully sequenced opportunities to make the pertinent "placement" responses, to provide immediate feedback for those responses and, to the extent that the program is successfully self-instructional, to free, for more actual typing, class time that would otherwise be spent in explanations by teachers of matters of placement.

The materials provide a comprehensive curriculum and are organized in a fashion that permits selection from and ordering of sections of the program in accordance with student abilities, course objectives, and course length.

The ultimate objective is the reduction of complaints among employers about shortages of and insufficient skills among typists through the furnishing of a marketable skill to disadvantaged urban trainees, who currently complete clerical training with skills that bear little relationship to job requirements. The special demand for senior typists could also be met. The merit of the program for the former purpose involves field trial among disadvantaged urban high school trainees, currently at the midpoint in the classes of teachers whose students will be tested on the same materials used for the testing of their students a year earlier, after conventional instruction. That is, previous students of these teachers in the same schools furnish control-group scores following conventional (nonprogramed) instruction. Criterion scores of their present students, following use of the programed materials, will constitute experimental-group scores. However, as described in the earlier footnote (pp. 11-12), field trial is being conducted under other auspices, and no results are as yet available for inclusion in the present report.

#### References

- Bugelski, B. R. Psychology of learning. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1956.
- Crawford, T. J. The effect of emphasizing production typewriting contrasted with speed typewriting in developing production typewriting ability. (Doctoral dissertation, University of Pittsburgh) Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1956, No. 56-3816.
- Featheringham, R. D. The validity of personal-use typewriting courses as determined by an analysis of the practical applications of the subject over a fifteen-year period (1950-1964). (Doctoral dissertation, University of North Dakota) Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1966, No. 66-2170.
- Frisch, V. An analysis of clerical business typing papers and forms for the improvement of instructional materials. (Doctoral dissertation, New York University) Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1953, No. A53-837.

- Fry, E. B. A readability formula that saves time. Journal of Reading, 1968, 11, 513-516.
- McLean, G. N. Difficulty indices and performance standards for office typing tasks. USOE Project No. 8-B-113. (in preparation)
- Muhich, D. Key-stroking vs. decision-making factors in proficiency at office typing tasks. Master's thesis, Southern Illinois University (Carbondale), 1967.
- Perkins, E. A., Jr., Byrd, F. R., and Roley, D. E. Clusters of tasks associated with performance of major types of office work. USOE Project No. 7-0031, 1968.
- Porter, S. Typewriter boom. New York Post Magazine, June 22, 1966, p. 2.
- Rutzick, M. and Swerdloff, S. The occupational structure of U.S. employment. Monthly Labor Review, 1962, 85, 1209-1213.
- Stolurow, L. M. The psychology of skills, Part II: analysis and implications. Delta Pi Epsilon Journal, 1959, 2(3), 16-31.
- U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. Employment projections by industry and occupation, 1960-1975. Monthly Labor Review, 1963, 86, 240-248.
- U.S. Department of Labor. Occupational outlook handbook, 1966-67 edition, Bulletin No. 1450. Washington, D.C.: GPO.
- West, L. J. Some relationships between straight-copy typing skill and performance on job-type activities. Delta Pi Epsilon Journal, 1960, 3(1), 17-27.
- West, L. J. Occupational use of typing skill among graduates of a collegiate school of business. Balance Sheet, 1961, 42, 400-401.
- West, L. J. Production proficiency among typists--research and implications. Business Education Forum, 1967, 22(2), 5-7.
- West, L. J. The vocabulary of instructional materials for typing and stenographic training--research findings and implications. Delta Pi Epsilon Journal, 1968, 10(3), 13-25.
- West, L. J. Acquisition of typewriting skills. New York: Pitman, 1969.
- West, L. J. and Bolanovich, D. J. Evaluation of typewriting proficiency training: preliminary test development. Journal of Applied Psychology, 1963, 47, 403-407.
- Wright, G. S. Summary of offerings and enrollments in high-school subjects, 1960-61 (Preliminary Report). USOE, OE-24010, June 1964.
- Wright, G. S. Subject offerings and enrollments in public secondary schools. USOE, OE-24015-61. Washington, D.C.: GPO, 1965.

PROGRAMED TYPEWRITING  
for  
Decision-Making Aspects in Vocational and Personal Uses

Leonard J. West  
City University of New York (Division of Teacher Education)

<u>Section</u>	<u>Topic</u>	<u>No. of Frames</u>	<u>No. of Pages</u>
1	Centering at the typewriter	19	7
2	Horizontal centering of single lines	46	16
3	Vertical centering	34	12
4	Vertical centering of simple tables	37	13
5	Tables without column headings (backspace method)	40	14
6	Tables with column headings (backspace method)	26	9
7	Tables without column headings (arithmetic method)	22	8
8	Tables with column headings (arithmetic method)	31	11
9	Advanced table typing	105	36
10	Vertical margins for business letters	34	12
11	Horizontal margins for business letters	22	8
12	Advanced business letters	40	14
13	Estimation of copy length and centering of estimated materials	45	16
14	Manuscript and report typing	<u>40</u>	<u>14</u>
		541	190

Note

These materials were developed under a small contract with the U.S. Office of Education (Region II), under Project 9-B-074, in preparation for field trial under contract with the New York City Board of Education (Business Education Proposal No. 1, 1969-70). Local publication of these ready-for-trial materials is as: Research Report 70-2, February 1970.

## How to Use These Instructional Materials

These materials are an example of what is called Programed Instruction. They are designed so that you can learn from them without the aid of a teacher and are different from ordinary textbooks.

The materials are "programed" in a series of small steps called frames. Each frame gives a bit of information. You show that you have understood the information by filling in one or more missing words in the frame. In that way, you will be paying close attention and will be taking an active role in your learning. After you have filled in the blanks, check your answers against the model answers given alongside the next frame.

A program is not a test. The frames are designed to teach you, not to trick you. You fill in blanks only to see whether you have learned the information given in the frames.

Three features of programed instruction give these materials a simple appearance:

1. The step-by-step presentation of subject matter
2. Your activity in filling in the blanks
3. The immediate checking of your answers against model answers

But it is just these three features that insure that you will learn, PROVIDED you give full attention and complete concentration to each frame. If you skim through the program in a casual way, you will not learn much.

This is what you do:

1. Read each frame carefully and fill in the blanks. Sometimes a frame will have one blank, sometimes several.

2. After you have filled in all the blanks in a frame, check your answers against the model answers shown at the left of the next frame.

- a. Your answers will usually be correct IF you have read the frame with close attention and IF you remember what you learned in earlier frames. If they are correct, go on to the next frame.

- b. If your answers are wrong, read the frame again or refer back to the earlier frame that contains the necessary information. Try to understand why your answers are wrong and why the model answers are the correct ones. In that way you will probably avoid making the same kind of mistake again. Do not erase any wrong answers you may make; instead, draw a light line through your wrong answer and fill in the correct answer above (or below or alongside) your original wrong answer. When you have made the correction, go on to the next frame.

3. Continue in this manner throughout the program:

Read attentively

Answer by filling in blanks

Check your answers against the model answers

Reconsider your answers if they were incorrect; lightly line out any wrong answer and fill in the correct one

Continue with the next frame

Since a program is not a test, you have nothing to gain--and much to lose--if you look at the model answers in advance. Cover the model answers with a card; uncover and examine them only after you have written in your answers.

In this program each frame has one or more blanks to be filled in. Some examples of the types of fill-ins are given below. Notice that the model answer is given alongside (at the left) of the next frame. What You Do

	1. The day after Monday is _____.	Write <u>Tuesday</u> in the blank
Tuesday	2. The first president of the U.S. was _____. (a/b/c/d)  a. Thomas Jefferson b. Abraham Lincoln c. George Washington d. Woodrow Wilson	Write the <u>letter</u> of the correct answer in the blank--write <u>c</u> (for George Washington)
c	3. A week has _____ days. (how many?)	Write <u>7</u> in the blank
7	4. The number of states in the Union is _____. (48/49/50)	Select the right answer from the choices given in parentheses and write it in the blank--write <u>50</u>
50		

The four most important points are these:

1. Don't just read the frames; read with close attention.
2. Remember what you learn in each frame so that you can use the information in later frames.
3. Before you fill in a blank, make sure you understand the question.
4. If an answer does not occur to you immediately, don't give up too quickly. THINK about it and try hard to supply an answer before you look at the model answer.

When you complete this section, you should understand the meaning of centering at the typewriter and be able to judge whether typed material is attractively arranged on the page.

1-0

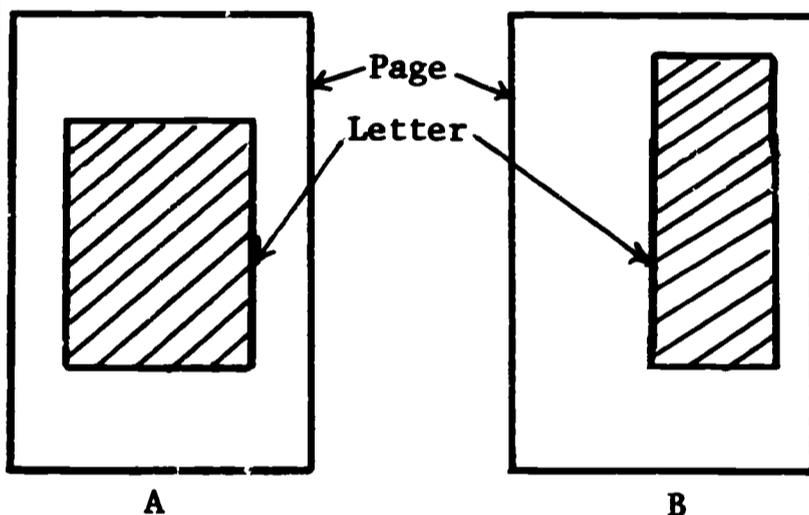
### Section 1

### Centering at the Typewriter

19 Frames

1-1

Good typing means more than just striking the right keys at a good speed. A typist's work must also be attractively arranged on the page.

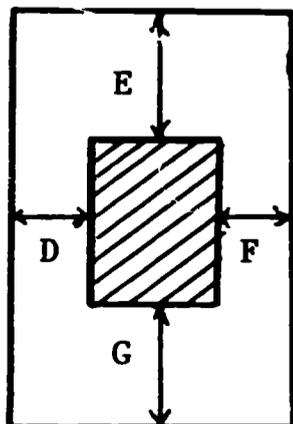


The shaded areas at the left represent business letters typed on ordinary stationery. Of the two, the one that is more attractive is         .  
(A/B)

A

1-2

Nearly always, a typed item will be attractive on the page if it is centered. A centered item has as much blank space to the left of it as to the          of it and as much blank space above it as          it.



For example, the shaded area at the left is centered from side to side because the distance at D equals the distance at         .

(E/F/G) The shaded area is centered up and down because the distance at E equals the distance at         .  
(D/F/G)

right

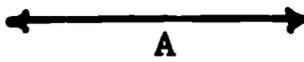
below (or synonym)

F

G

Vertical means up and down.

Horizontal means from side to side.



Of the two arrows at the left, the one that is horizontal is

(A/B)

1-3

A

Let's use H for horizontal and horizontally.

Let's use V for vertical and \_\_\_\_\_.

An up-and-down direction is (H/V).

1-4

vertically

V

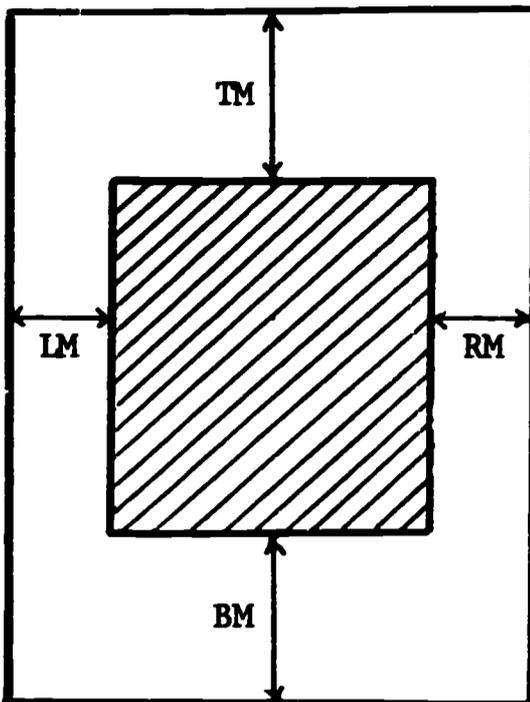
H stands for \_\_\_\_\_ and, also, \_\_\_\_\_.

V stands for \_\_\_\_\_ and, also, \_\_\_\_\_.

1-5

horizontal (and)  
horizontally  
vertical (and)  
vertically

1-6



The blank areas around a typed item are called the margins. There are four of them: TM (top margin), BM (bottom margin), LM (left margin), and RM (\_\_\_\_\_ margin). In the sketch at the left you can see that the distance at TM = the distance at \_\_\_\_\_. Also, LM = \_\_\_\_\_.

right  
BM  
RM

1-7

LM and RM are the \_\_\_\_\_ margins. TM and BM are the \_\_\_\_\_ margins.  
(H/V) (H/V)

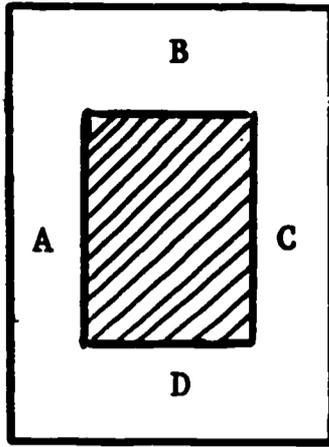
H  
V

1-8

A shorter term for horizontal margins is side margins. The side margins are the distances to the left and \_\_\_\_\_ of a typed item. For the distances above and below a typed item, there is no shorter term; they are called the \_\_\_\_\_ margins.  
(one word)

right  
vertical

1-9

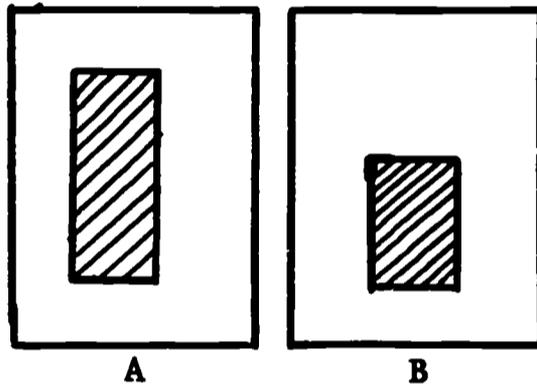


In the sketch at the left, the horizontal or \_\_\_\_\_ margins are lettered \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. The other margins, which are lettered \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, are called the \_\_\_\_\_ margins.  
(one word)

side

A (and) C  
B (and) D  
vertical

1-10



Horizontal centering is separate from vertical centering. An item could be centered H, but not V. That is, it could have equal side margins, but unequal vertical margins, as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A/B)

Or it could be centered V, but not H. That is, it could have equal top and bottom margins, but unequal side margins, as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A/B)

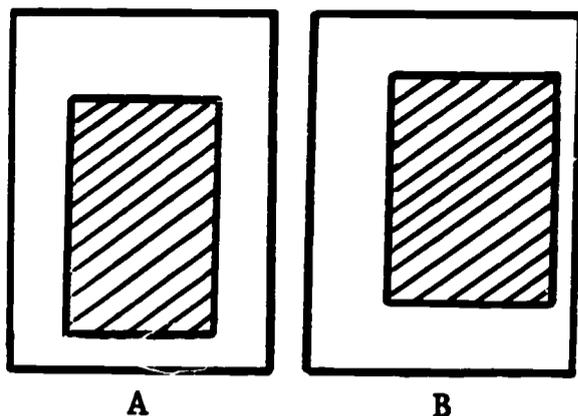
B  
A

1-11

An item that is not centered is said to be "off-center." An item could be centered horizontally (equal side margins) but be off-center vertically (unequal top and bottom margins). If an item has equal top and bottom margins, but unequal side margins, then it is centered \_\_\_\_\_ but off-center \_\_\_\_\_.  
(H/V)

V  
H

1-12



A

B

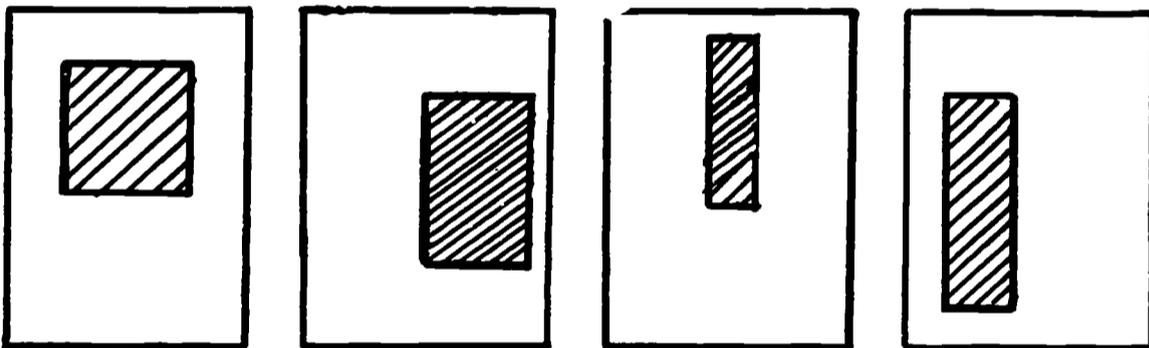
Because the side margins are not equal, item          is off-center         .  
(A/B) (H/V)

Because TM does not equal BM, item          is off-center         .  
(A/B) (H/V)

B  
H  
A  
V

1-13

Which one or more of the items below do you believe to be off-center horizontally?          Vertically?           
(A/B/C/D) (A/B/C/D)



A

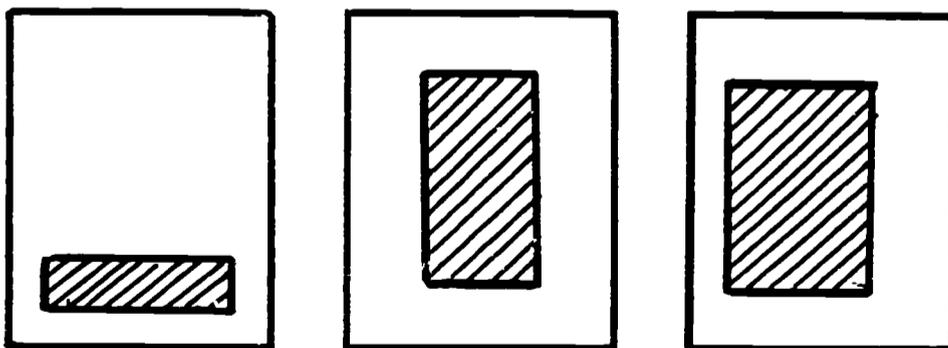
B

C

D

B, D  
A, C, D

1-14



A

B

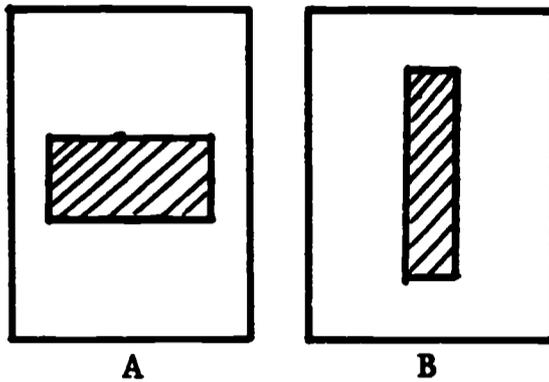
C

Which sketch (A, B, C) fits each of the following descriptions?

- |                       | <u>Sketch</u> |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| Centered both H and V | _____         |
| Centered V but not H  | _____         |
| Centered H but not V  | _____         |

B  
C  
A

Perfect centering (both H and V) requires that LM = RM and that TM = BM. It is not necessary that the side margins equal the vertical margins.

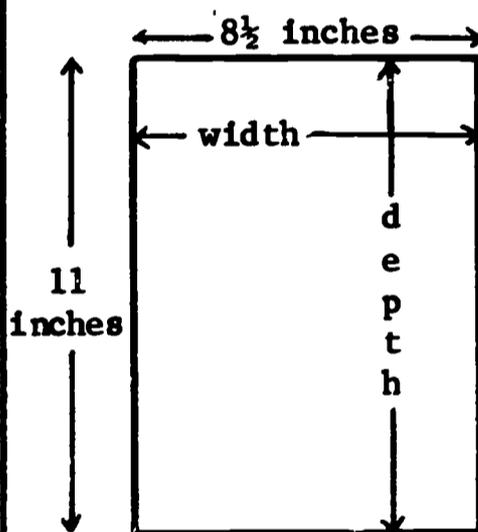


Perfect centering--both H and V--is shown at the left in

\_\_\_\_\_.  
(only A/only B/both/neither)

both  
(because in both sketches LM = RM and TM = BM)

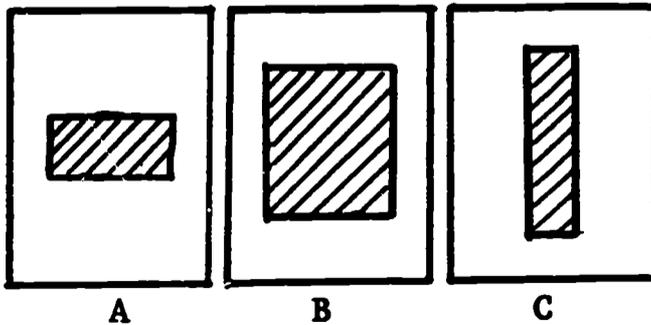
The width of an item is its distance from side to side. The depth of an item is its distance from top to \_\_\_\_\_.



After a number, the quotation mark (") stands for inches. Ordinary stationery, sketched at the left, measures 8 1/2" x 11" (8 1/2 by 11 inches). It is \_\_\_\_\_ (deeper/wider) than it is \_\_\_\_\_ (deep/wide).

bottom  
deeper  
wide

An item could be perfectly centered, yet be unattractive because it is too narrow (horizontally) in comparison with its depth (vertically), as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_. Or it could be too wide in relation to its depth, as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_.

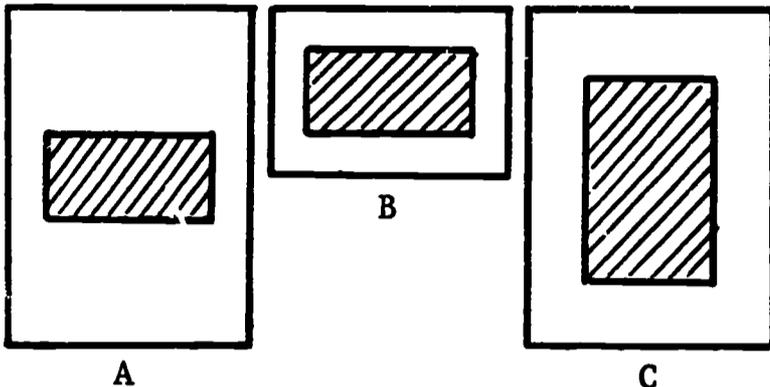


A more pleasing relationship between the side and vertical margins is shown in sketch \_\_\_\_\_.

C  
A  
B

1-18

If the paper on which you are typing is deeper than it is wide, then the typed material on it should be deeper than it is \_\_\_\_\_, as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_. On the other hand, if the paper on which you are typing is wider than it is deep,



the typed material on it should be wider than it is \_\_\_\_\_, as in sketch \_\_\_\_\_.

wide  
C  
deep  
B

1-19

Here's a little TEST on the main terms and ideas about CENTERING covered in Frames 1 to 18. . . . .

1. Side-to-side centering is called \_\_\_\_\_ centering. It requires equal \_\_\_\_\_ margins.
2. Up-and-down centering is called \_\_\_\_\_ centering; it requires equal \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ margins.
3. On 8½" x 11" stationery, an attractively centered item is one that \_\_\_\_\_.  
(a/b/c)
  - a. has side margins that equal vertical margins
  - b. is deeper than it is wide
  - c. is wider than it is deep

1. horizontal side (or left and right)
2. vertical top (and) bottom (either order)
3. b

When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to determine the size of type on your typewriter.
2. How to find the center point on paper of any width.
3. How to prepare the typewriter for horizontal centering.

In either of the two common sizes of type:

4. How to center horizontally by arithmetic.
5. How to center horizontally by backspacing.

2-0

### Section 2

#### Horizontal Centering of Single Lines

46 Frames

2-1

1 inch



Pica: correspond  
 Elite: corresponded

Horizontal centering depends on the size of type. The two common sizes are pica (pronounced "pie-ka," not "peeka") and elite (pronounced "ay-leet," not "ee-light").

You can tell by counting the number of letters in the examples above that one horizontal inch contains \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?) pica spaces or \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?) elite spaces.

10

12

2-2

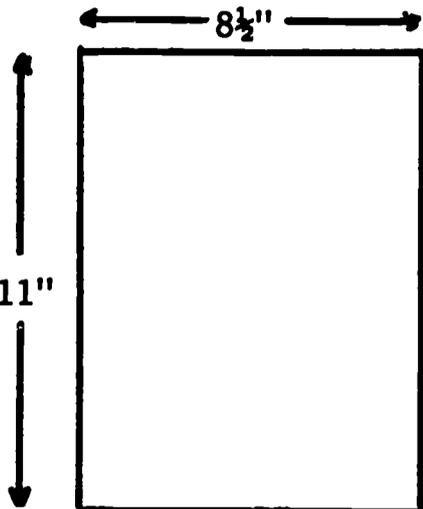
In each horizontal inch of pica type there are \_\_\_\_ spaces.  
 In each horizontal inch of elite type there are \_\_\_\_ spaces.

**This is a sample of pica type.**  
 Elite type is shown in this example.

Compared with elite type, pica type is \_\_\_\_\_ (smaller/larger) and therefore \_\_\_\_\_ (more/less) legible (readable). Because the type is smaller, you can get more words on the page in \_\_\_\_\_ (pica/elite) type.

10  
12  
larger  
more  
elite

2-3



Standard-size stationery or typing paper, sketched at the left, is \_\_\_\_\_ inches wide and \_\_\_\_\_ inches long.

A little x is the "times" sign, as in  $2 \times 4 = 8$ . But in expressing dimensions, as in  $8\frac{1}{2}'' \times 11''$ , the x stands for the word \_\_\_\_\_.

$8\frac{1}{2}$   
11  
by

2-4

The various scales on the typewriter are marked in typewriter spaces, not in inches. Therefore, to center an item horizontally, you must know how many spaces wide the paper is. You must convert or change inches into spaces.

See the arithmetic at the right. It shows that across  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches of paper, with 10 pica spaces to the inch, there are  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 10$  (which is  $8 \times 10$  plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 10) = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

10
x $8\frac{1}{2}$
5
+ 80
—
?

In elite type, paper is  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 12 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide.

85  
102

2-5

Note. When you see a \* after a word, look at the \_\_\_\_\_ footnote below.

Here's how to determine the size of type.\* Hold the left edge of your paper at zero on the carriage scale or paper bail scale. If the right edge of the paper reaches 85 on that scale, you have \_\_\_\_\_ type. On the other hand, if it reaches \_\_\_\_\_, you have \_\_\_\_\_ type.

\*The procedures described here apply only to typewriters with zero at the left edge of the scale.

pica  
102  
elite

2-6

The center of a 12-inch ruler is at the 6-inch point ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of 12 inches). The horizontal center of a page that is 102 elite spaces wide is at half of 102, which is \_\_\_\_.

51

2-7

In the same way, the center of a pica page is at  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 85, which is  $42\frac{1}{2}$ . However, the typewriter scale is marked in whole, not half, spaces. For pica type, we must throw away the  $\frac{1}{2}$  and use \_\_\_\_ as the center.

42

2-8

The center point depends on the width of the paper. Only on paper that is  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide is the pica center at \_\_\_\_ and the elite center at \_\_\_\_.

For each different width of paper there is a different center point. Some personal stationery is 5 inches wide, containing  $5 \times 10 =$  \_\_\_\_ pica spaces. Its pica center is at  $\frac{1}{2}$  of \_\_\_\_, which is \_\_\_\_\_. Its elite center is at \_\_\_\_\_.

42

51

50

50

25

30 (1/2 of 5 x 12)

2-9

To say that something has been centered horizontally is to say that half of it is to the left of the center and the other half to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the center. For example, if a 4-letter word were centered horizontally, there would be \_\_\_\_\_ letters on each side of the \_\_\_\_\_.

right

2

center

(or middle or midpoint)

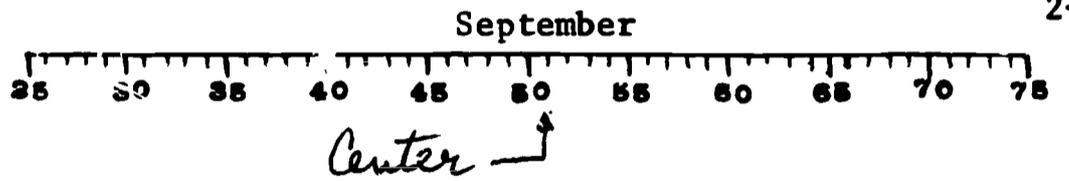
2-10

A 6-letter centered word would have \_\_\_\_\_ letters on each side of the center. A 10-letter word would have \_\_\_\_\_ letters on each side of the center.

3

5

2-11



A portion of an elite typewriter scale is shown above, with the word September centered above it.

You can see that the numbers on the scale get higher as you go to the \_\_\_\_\_ and that the beginning of any centered item starts to the \_\_\_\_\_ of center, at a scale number \_\_\_\_\_ than the center point.

(left/right)

(left/right)

(lower/higher)

right  
left  
lower

2-12

To center something horizontally, you have to find the point on the carriage scale at which to start the typing. If you start at the correct point, how much of the item will be on each side of the center when you finish typing? \_\_\_\_\_

half

2-13

A horizontally centered 4-letter word would start \_\_\_\_\_ spaces to the left of center; an 8-letter word would start \_\_\_\_\_ space to the \_\_\_\_\_ of center.

2  
4  
left

2-14

If a 4-letter word is to start 2 spaces to the left of center, in pica type (center at 42) it would start at 42 minus 2; that is, at \_\_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

To find the starting point for centering any word, subtract from the center point of the page half the number of letters in the word. For example, a 6-letter word in elite type (center at \_\_\_\_\_) would start at \_\_\_\_\_ minus \_\_\_\_\_, which is \_\_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

40

51

51 - 3

48

2-15

The steps in horizontal centering are:

1. Count the number of typewriter strokes in the item to be centered.
2. Divide that number by 2.
3. Subtract the result from center (42 pica, 51 elite).

Apply the above steps to the pica centering of the word typewriter.

Step 1: The word has \_\_\_\_ letters.

Step 2: Half of \_\_\_\_ letters is \_\_\_\_ letters.

Step 3: Subtract \_\_\_\_ from the pica center at \_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_.

1. 10

2. 10 (is) 5

3. 5 (from) 42 (resulting in) 37

2-16

Here's how to find the starting point for typing any item to be centered horizontally. Count the number of typewriter strokes in the item and subtract \_\_\_\_\_ that number from the center point.

half

2-17

To center the word Services in elite type, you would subtract \_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_ and start to type at \_\_\_\_ on the scale.

4  
51  
47

2-18

An item to be centered horizontally could contain several words and it could include numbers, punctuation marks, or special characters. Therefore you must count everything that takes a space on the page--everything that, when typed, moves the carriage a space. For example, My Story contains \_\_\_\_ letters and \_\_\_\_ space(s) between words--for a total of \_\_\_\_ typewriter strokes.

7  
1  
8

2-19

Notice the stroke count (numbered below the item):

Fall Sale  
123456789

From the example above, you can see that the space between words \_\_\_\_\_ counted.  
(is/is not)

The Zoo Story counts as \_\_\_\_ typewriter strokes.

is  
13

2-20

How many typewriter strokes (letters, spaces, numbers, punctuation marks, symbols) are there in each of the following items?

	<u>No. of Strokes</u>
Horizontal Centering	_____
A \$50 Bargain	_____
Flight to the Moon	_____
"Spot," The Friendliest Dog	_____

20  
13  
18  
27

Now count these:

No. of Strokes

*World's Records* \_\_\_\_\_

*The Mysterious Stranger* \_\_\_\_\_

*CBS News* \_\_\_\_\_

*Washington, D. C.* \_\_\_\_\_

15  
23  
8  
17

Now a brief TEST on what you have learned so far. . . . .

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ common sizes of typewriter type.  
(how many?)

a. In the larger one, called \_\_\_\_\_ type, each horizontal inch contains \_\_\_\_\_ spaces and, across an 8½-inch page, there are \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

b. In the smaller type, called \_\_\_\_\_, each inch contains \_\_\_\_\_ spaces and, across an 8½-inch page, there are \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

2. In the larger type, the center point is at \_\_\_\_\_; in the smaller type, at \_\_\_\_\_.

[Test continued in the next frame.]

1. 2  
a. pica  
10  
85  
b. elite  
12  
102  
2. 42  
51

(Test continued)

3. To find the starting point for an item to be centered horizontally, you subtract \_\_\_\_\_  
(what from what?)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. To center Spring Clearance in pica type, you would start to type at \_\_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale. In elite, a centered World's Fair would start at \_\_\_\_\_.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point. Or you may wish to continue through Frame 2-38 or 2-44 or 2-46.]

3. half the number of typewriter strokes from the center point  
(or equivalent answer)

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign. 12/2 means 12 ÷ 2.

4. 34 (42 - 16/2)  
45 (51 - 12/2)

2-24

The arithmetic of counting strokes and subtracting \_\_\_\_\_ that number from the \_\_\_\_\_ point has been described only to insure that you understand the thought behind horizontal centering. In actual practice, no typist does arithmetic to center single lines; he lets the typewriter do the arithmetic for him. A first step is to position the carriage at the center point. In the large type called \_\_\_\_\_, the center is at \_\_\_\_; in the smaller type called \_\_\_\_\_, the center point is at \_\_\_\_.

half  
center  
pica  
42  
elite  
51

2-25

You realize, of course, that 42 (or 51) will be at the center of your page if and only if the left edge of the page is exactly at zero at the left edge of the carriage scale. Therefore, first set your paper guide exactly at \_\_\_\_\_ and insert your paper with its left edge right up against the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(what machine part?)

zero  
paper guide

2-26

With paper guide set exactly at \_\_\_\_\_ and paper inserted up against the guide, get your margins out of the way by setting them to the extreme left and right of the machine. Then clear all tab stops and set a tab stop at 42 (pica) or at 51 (elite)--which are the horizontal center points for paper that is \_\_\_\_\_ inches wide.

zero

8½

tab(ulator)

4

left

4

4

2-27

Horizontal centering of single lines by machine (rather than by arithmetic) starts at the center point. Since you have set a tab stop at that point, to reach it from your left margin all you have to do is to depress the \_\_\_\_\_ key or bar.

2-28

You probably remember from an earlier frame in this program that a horizontally centered 8-letter word would start \_\_\_\_\_ spaces to the \_\_\_\_\_ of center. For that 8-letter word, instead of subtracting \_\_\_\_\_ spaces (how many?) from the center point, you could backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times from the center point.

2-29

Assume that you have tabulated to the center point of your page and that you want to center a 6-letter word. Instead of first counting the number of letters in the word, you could backspace once for each two letters in the word. If so, you would backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times. (how many?)

3

2-30

You do not have to count the number of letters in order to determine how many times to backspace from the \_\_\_\_\_ point. Instead, just spell the word in groups of two letters. As you spell each 2-letter group, depress the \_\_\_\_\_ key once.

center  
backspace

2-31

Just for illustration, a vertical line is used to separate the 2-letter groups, as in the word ce|nt|er. To center that word, you would spell ce and backspace once; then spell nt and backspace again; finally, spell er and backspace a third time. After these \_\_\_\_\_ backspaces (how many?) your carriage would be at \_\_\_\_ (pica) or at \_\_\_\_ (elite).

3

39

48

2-32

The example at the right shows the 2-letter groups and the number of backspaces needed to find the starting point for typing the word.

ty|pe|wr|it|er  
1 2 3 4 5

Mark (in pen or pencil), by inserting vertical lines, the 2-letter groups in each of the words below and write in the blank the number of backspaces needed to position the carriage at the proper starting point for typing.

	<u>No. of Backspaces</u>
<u>Example:</u> Vertically	<u>5</u>
Circumstance	_____
Profit	_____
Calendar	_____

Circumstance 6  
 Profit 3  
 Calendar 4

2-33

Spell out loud in groups of 2 and count on your fingers as you spell each group. Estimate how many seconds it takes you to do that for the word November.

How many 2-letter groups are there in November? \_\_\_\_\_

4

2-34

Now do arithmetic:

1. Count the number of strokes.
2. Divide that number by 2.
3. Subtract the result from 42 (pica).

Estimate how many seconds it takes you to carry out the three steps listed above for the word Industry.

In pica type you would start to type Industry at \_\_\_\_\_ on the scale.

38

2-35

Your time estimate for spelling in groups of 2 (Frame 2-33) is surely less than your estimate for doing arithmetic (Frame 2-34). As compared to centering by arithmetic, centering by the backspace method is much \_\_\_\_\_.

(faster/slower)

faster

2-36

When backspacing for each 2-stroke group, you must include everything that, when typed, moves the carriage a space. For example, the groups in My Story (spell them stroke by stroke) are: My space-S to ry, for a total of \_\_\_\_ backspaces. For Sale would be spelled as: For-space Sa le, for a total of \_\_\_\_ backspaces. Consider: Profit Statement. Mark it with vertical lines to show that it would require \_\_\_\_ backspaces.

4  
4  
Profit Statement  
8

2-37

Notice how punctuation and symbols are counted in Discount Sale 10% Off.

D|s|c|o|u|n|t|space-S|a|l|e-comma|space-1|0%|space-0|ff  
 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11

To center the above item you would backspace \_\_\_\_ times. When you finish backspacing, your carriage will be at \_\_\_\_ (pica) or at \_\_\_\_ (elite).

11  
31  
40

2-38

The best way to find the starting point for centering an item horizontally is to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (a/b/c)

- a. Count the number of typewriter strokes in the item to be centered. Then subtract half that number from the center point.
- b. Count on your fingers as you spell by 2's; then subtract your finger count from the center point.
- c. Backspace as you spell by 2's--one backspace for each 2-stroke group.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 2-44 or 2-46.]

c

2-39

Every example used so far has had an even number of strokes--so that there is nothing left over when you have completed your spelling by 2's. If the item to be centered contained an odd number of strokes, after spelling by 2's there would be \_\_\_\_ stroke(s) left over.

1

2-40

When centering by backspacing ignore a leftover letter; do not backspace for it. The Zoo Story counts out as: Th|e-space|Zo|o-space|St|or|y. For the final y in that item, you \_\_\_\_\_ backspace. If you backspace correctly, you will backspace \_\_\_\_ times.  
(should/should not)

should not

6

2-41

Here's a demonstration that backspacing and arithmetic give the same results. Assume elite type and consider My Story. Starting at 51, after backspacing for My you will be at 50; another backspace for space-S will bring you to 49; to will bring you to 48; and ry will bring you to \_\_\_\_\_. By counting and arithmetic, My Story has \_\_\_\_\_ strokes; subtracting half that number from \_\_\_\_\_ also results in \_\_\_\_\_.

47  
8  
51  
47

2-42

Do not fall asleep over spelling by 2's. Spell fast and backspace rapidly as you spell. But depress the backspace key fully (or the carriage may not backspace). Don't punch the key (or the carriage may back up two spaces instead of one). On an electric typewriter with continuous backspacing, lift your finger off the backspace key after each tap. If you operate the backspace key improperly, your work will be \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a/b/c) a. Too high
- b. Too low
- c. Off-center horizontally

c

2-43

Now let's summarize the steps in horizontal centering of single lines.

1. Set the paper guide at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Set side margins out of the way. Then clear tab stops and set one at \_\_\_\_ (pica) or at \_\_\_\_ (elite).
3. After setting a tab stop, to reach it from the left margin, depress the \_\_\_\_\_ key or bar.
4. To find the starting point for typing: depress the \_\_\_\_\_ key \_\_\_\_\_ time(s) for each \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?) \_\_\_\_\_ typewriter strokes in the item. \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?)

1. zero
2. 42  
51
3. tab(ular)
4. backspace  
1  
2

2-44

Now a little TEST. Mark each item with vertical lines and fill in the blanks to the right of each item. . . . .

	Number of Backspaces	Starting Point Pica	Elite
<u>Example:</u> September Song	<u>7</u>	<u>35</u>	<u>44</u>
Discount--10%	_____	_____	_____
January 14, 1969	_____	_____	_____
"Hamlet," by Shakespeare	_____	_____	_____

If you have a typewriter at hand, continue with the next two frames. If not, wait until you are at a typewriter.

Discount--10%

6 36 45

January 14, 1969

8 34 43

"Hamlet," by Shakespeare

12 30 39

Pica    Elite

1.    36    45

2.    24    33

3.    36    45

Pica    Elite

1.    26    35

2.    31    40

3.    31    40

4.    19    28

2-45

On your (home, school, or office) typewriter, center and type each of the items below--one below the other in double spacing. Be sure to backspace as you spell by 2's. When you finish typing all three items, move the carriage to the starting point of each item and check the number on the carriage scale against the model answers.

1.                    How to Center
2.                    The Story of "Flash," My Siamese Cat
3.                    A \$50 Bargain

2-46

If you made any mistakes on the preceding three items, it may be because you lost your place while counting off by 2's. With one finger on the backspace key, keep eyes on copy and, with the index finger of the other hand, point along the item as you spell through it by 2's. Now try these:

1.                    Balance Sheet, December 31, 1969
2.                    *Summer Travel Bargains*
3.                    Luncheon Special--\$1.05
4.                    "Armies of the Night" Wins 1969 Pulitzer Prize

When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to determine how many typed lines fit on paper of various lengths.
2. How to center a set of lines vertically on the page.
3. How to check your starting line before you type.

Section 3  
Vertical Centering

34 Frames

In a horizontally centered item, the left margin equals the right margin. In a vertically centered item, the \_\_\_\_\_ margin equals the \_\_\_\_\_ margin.

top (=) bottom  
(either order)

Horizontal margins (and the width of the paper) are counted in spaces. Vertical margins (and the depth of the paper) are counted in lines. We type across the page in spaces and down the page in \_\_\_\_\_.

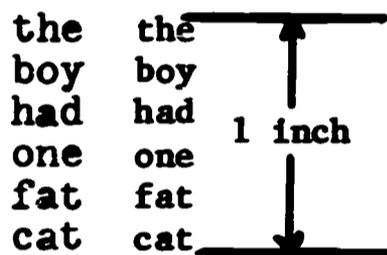
lines

3-3

To center horizontally we first had to determine that, across paper that is  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide, there are \_\_\_ pica or \_\_\_ elite spaces. To center vertically we first have to change into number of lines paper that is \_\_\_ inches long or deep.

85  
102  
11

3-4



For horizontal centering, we had to know how many spaces across the page make one inch. For vertical centering, we need to know how many lines down the page fit in one inch.

As the examples at the upper left show, in both pica and elite type, 1 vertical inch contains \_\_\_ lines. Paper that is 11 inches long therefore contains a total of  $11 \times \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  lines.

6  
6  
66

3-5

With 6 lines to every vertical inch, government stationery (8" wide and 10" long) is \_\_\_ lines long. Personal stationery (5" wide and 8" long) is \_\_\_ lines long.

60

3-6

48

The arithmetic of horizontal centering can be done on the typewriter by using the \_\_\_\_\_ key. A different part of the typewriter can be used to do the arithmetic of vertical centering, but the method is a slow one and it is easy to make mistakes. It is better to do your own arithmetic for up-and-down or \_\_\_\_\_ centering.

backspace

3-7

vertical

If the 5-letter word March were centered horizontally in pica type, it would start at 40 on the carriage scale; that is, there would be 40 spaces in the LM (left margin). In horizontal centering, LM = RM. Therefore, the RM would also contain \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Notice that--

$$\text{LM} + \text{typing} + \text{RM} = \text{total spaces across the page.}$$

That is:  $40 + 5 + \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}.$

40

3-8

40 = 85

In the same way for vertical centering:

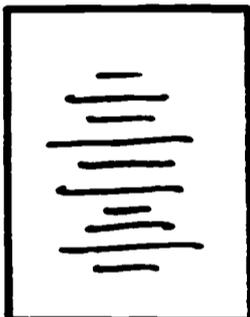
$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Number of lines in TM (top margin)} \\ &+ \text{Number of lines of typing} \\ &\underline{\text{Number of lines in BM (bottom margin)}} \\ &= \text{Total lines available on the page} \end{aligned}$$

That is, TM + typing + BM should equal (on 11" paper) \_\_\_\_\_ lines.

Suppose you wanted to center vertically 6 lines of typing. That would leave 66 minus 6 or \_\_\_\_ blank lines for the two vertical margins. Since TM should equal BM, divide the blank lines equally (by 2), resulting in leaving, in each of the vertical margins, \_\_\_\_ blank lines.

Vertical centering requires finding out how many lines of top margin there should be above your first line of typing.

To do that:



1. Count the number of lines to be typed.
2. Subtract that number from 66.
3. Divide the difference by 2.

If you apply those three steps to the sketch at the left, you will find that the TM will have \_\_\_\_\_ blank lines.  
(how many?)

$(66 - 10) \div 2$

Think of starting with \$1 (100 cents), spending part of it, and dividing your change equally into two pockets. If so, if you started with \$1 and spent 60¢, you would get \_\_\_\_¢ change and would put \_\_\_\_¢ into each pocket.

40  
20

3-12

Your two pockets are like the vertical (top and bottom) margins. But instead of starting with 100 cents, you are starting with \_\_\_\_ lines.

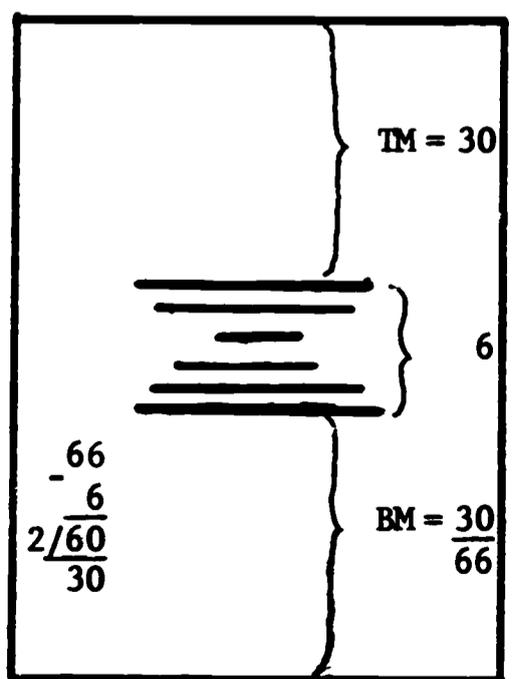
66

3-13

Fix in your mind two numbers: In each vertical inch there are \_\_\_\_ lines and, on a full 8½" x 11" page, \_\_\_\_ lines.

6  
66

3-14



To determine the number of lines in each vertical margin, subtract the number of typed lines from 66 and divide the difference by 2.

At the lower left in the sketch,  $66 - \underline{\quad} = \underline{\quad}$ ; and  $\underline{\quad} \div 2 = \underline{\quad}$ . Notice (at the right) that  $TM = \underline{\quad}$ , typed lines =  $\underline{\quad}$ ,  $BM = \underline{\quad}$ , and that  $TM + \text{typing} + BM = \underline{\quad}$ .

$$\begin{array}{r} (66-) 6 = 60 \\ 60 (\div 2) = 30 \\ 30 \\ 6 \\ \hline 30 \\ 66 \end{array}$$

the number of typed lines  
 the number of typed lines from 66  
 2

$$\begin{array}{r} 23 \\ (66 - 20) \div 2 \\ 25 \\ (66 - 16) \div 2 \\ 16 \\ (66 - 34) \div 2 \\ 28 \\ (66 - 10) \div 2 \end{array}$$

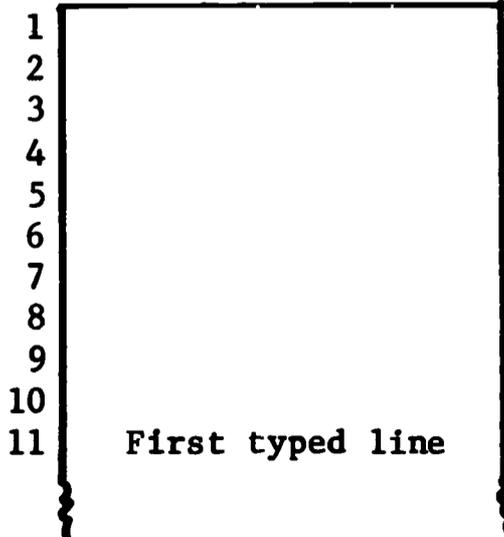
To determine the number of blank lines in each vertical margin, the steps are:

1. Count \_\_\_\_\_ (what?)
- 2 Subtract \_\_\_\_\_ (what from what?)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Divide the difference by \_\_\_\_\_.

Fill in the blanks in the right-hand column.

<u>Number of Typed Lines</u>	<u>Number of Lines in Top Margin</u>
20	_____
16	_____
34	_____
10	_____

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 3-19 or 3-23 or 3-27 or 3-34.]



As shown at the left, if some vertically centered item requires 10 blank lines as a TM, your first line of typing must be on line 11. If you typed on line 10, there would be only \_\_\_\_\_ blank lines above your first line of typing.

9

3-18

For a 10-line top margin, start to type on line 11. For a 17-line TM, start to type on line 18. For a 23-line TM, start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_. When you have determined how many blank lines should be in your top margin, start to type \_\_\_\_\_.

(a/b)

- a. on that line
- b. 1 line lower down on the page

24

3-19

b

The arithmetic at the left applies to the vertical centering of 16 lines. Notice that you first subtract the number of typed lines from \_\_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_\_. Next, you divide by 2 and find that the TM should contain \_\_\_\_\_ lines. You start to type 1 line lower down on the page, on line \_\_\_\_\_.

Use the sample arithmetic as a model to figure out that the first of 46 vertically centered lines would be typed on line \_\_\_\_\_ from the top edge of the paper.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 3-23 or 3-27 or 3-34.]

66

3-20

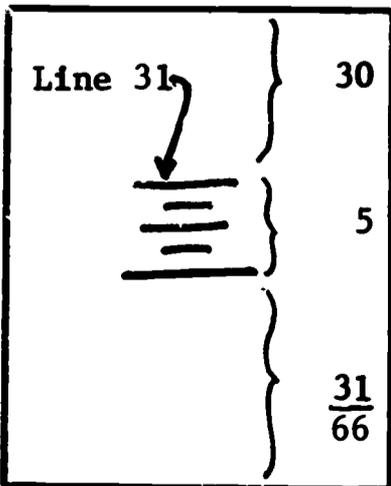
50

Sometimes, after subtracting the number of typed lines from 66, an odd number of lines remains for margins. If so, there will be 1 line left over after you divide by 2.

25

26

11



Example: If 5 of 66 lines are used for typing, 61 lines remain for margins. Division by \_\_\_\_\_ results in \_\_\_\_\_, with 1 line left over. Throw away the leftover line. Put \_\_\_\_\_ lines in your TM and start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 66 \\
 - 46 \\
 \hline
 20 \\
 2 \overline{) 20} \\
 \underline{10} \\
 10 \\
 \underline{1} \\
 11
 \end{array}$$

2

30

30

31

3-21

When determining the TM for a vertically centered item, if there is 1 line left over after dividing total blank lines by 2, you \_\_\_\_\_ add it to your TM.  
(should/should not)

should not

3-22

If some vertically centered item is to have a TM of 25 lines, you should start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.  
(24/25/26)

26

3-23

Remember that a full sheet of standard-size stationery or typing paper contains \_\_\_\_\_ lines from top to bottom. Fill in the blanks below.

	<u>No. of Typed Lines</u>	<u>Total Blank Lines</u>	<u>Start to Type on Line</u>
<u>Example:</u>	10	<u>56</u>	<u>29</u>
	36	_____	_____
	15	_____	_____
	18	_____	_____
	23	_____	_____

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 3-27 or 3-34.]

66  
30 16  
51 26  
46 25  
43 22

3-24

We want a centered item to be not only attractive, but also easy to read. Therefore, single spacing is rarely used.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8

PROGRAMED INSTRUCTION
on
Centering
at the
Typewriter

Instead, some of the typed lines are usually separated by one or more blank lines. The example at the left contains \_\_\_\_ typed lines + \_\_\_\_ blank lines, for a total of \_\_\_\_ lines.

5  
3  
8

3-25

Just as you count the spaces between words when backspacing for horizontal centering, you count the blank lines between typed lines when you do \_\_\_\_\_ centering.

vertical

3-26

When you double space, you type on every second line. Therefore, double spacing gives you \_\_\_\_ blank line(s) between typed lines. In triple spacing, you type on every third line--leaving, between typed lines, \_\_\_\_ blank lines.

1	_____
	x
2	_____
	x
	x
3	_____
4	_____
	x
5	_____

In the sketch at the left, the typed lines are numbered and a little x stands for a blank line. In the sketch, the total of typed plus blank lines is \_\_\_\_\_. Triple spacing is used between the lines that are numbered \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

1  
2  
9  
2 (and) 3

3-27

The number of blank lines used to separate typed lines is a matter of judgment--not rule. In the same item, a person might feel that some of the lines should be single spaced, other lines double spaced, and still others triple spaced. In the example in Frame 3-24 (refer to it) the last three lines are \_\_\_\_\_ spaced, but the first two typed lines are \_\_\_\_\_ spaced. After the word on, there is a \_\_\_\_\_ space.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through Frame 3-34.]

single  
double  
triple

3-28

Quite often, there are not enough lines to be centered to require using a full (66-line or 11-inch) sheet. Sometimes, a half-sheet is used. A half-sheet is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 11 inches, or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches, long; it is half of 66, or \_\_\_\_\_, lines long.

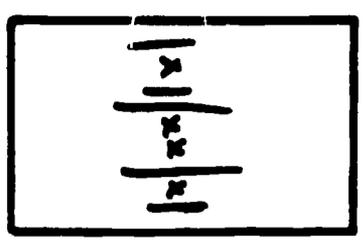
33

3-29

When using a half-sheet, instead of subtracting the number of lines of typing from 66, you subtract from \_\_\_\_\_ to determine the number of lines available for \_\_\_\_\_ margins. (horizontal/vertical)

33  
vertical

3-30



The example at the left has \_\_\_\_ typed lines + \_\_\_\_ blank lines, for a total of \_\_\_\_ lines. If it were to be centered vertically on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -

sheet, you would subtract \_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_.

The TM would contain \_\_\_\_ lines, and the typing would start on line \_\_\_\_.

5  
4  
9  
9  
33  
24  
12  
13

3-31

Mistakes in vertical centering are impossible to correct. Therefore it is wise to check your arithmetic and the correctness of your line count \_\_\_\_\_ you start to (before/after) type. Just make sure that: TM + typing + BM = 66 (or, on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -sheet, that the total = \_\_\_\_). On a full sheet, if there are 15 lines of typing, then the 51 blank lines divide into 25 and 26.

Here's the check:

	25	TM
	+ 15	typing
	<u>26</u>	BM
Fill in the blank	=	<u>        </u>
		?

before  
33  
66

3-32

A typist was about to center 12 lines vertically on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -sheet. His arithmetic showed 9 lines in the TM and 10 lines in the BM. Does TM (9) + typed lines (12) + BM (10) = 33? \_\_\_\_\_ Therefore, the typist's arithmetic (yes/no) \_\_\_\_\_ correct. (is/is not)

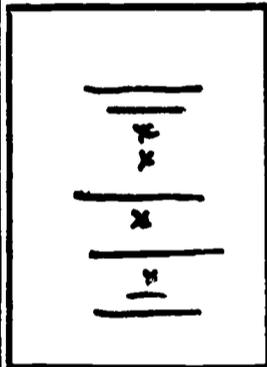
no  
is not

Don't take ages to space down to the starting line. Line up the top edge of your paper with the edge of the scale-- so that if you were to strike a key, it would just miss the top edge. Next, set your line space regulator for triple spacing and space down rapidly, counting by 3's (3, 6, 9, 12, etc.) until you are as close as possible to the desired line. Then, reset for single spacing and space down the final line or two.

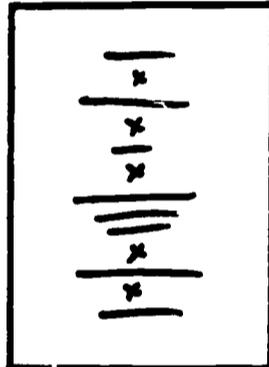
To reach line 19, use 6 triple spaces + 1 single space.  
To reach line 11, use \_\_\_ triple space(s) + \_\_\_ single space(s). To reach line 24, use \_\_\_ triple space(s) + \_\_\_ single space(s).

3  
2  
8  
0

Now a little TEST on vertical centering.



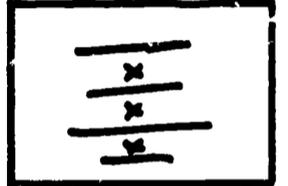
A--full sheet



B--full sheet



C--1/2-sheet



D--1/2-sheet

Start to  
Type on  
Sketch Line

- A \_\_\_\_\_
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- C \_\_\_\_\_
- D \_\_\_\_\_

To reach line 17 most rapidly, space down \_\_\_ triple space(s) + \_\_\_ single space(s).

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign. 12/2 means 12 ÷ 2.

- A)  $(66-10)/2 = 56/2 = 28$ ;  
and  $28 + 1 = \underline{29}$
  - B)  $(66-13)/2 = 53/2 = 26$ ;  
and  $26 + 1 = \underline{27}$
  - C)  $(33-4)/2 = 29/2 = 14$ ;  
and  $14 + 1 = \underline{15}$
  - D)  $(33-7)/2 = 26/2 = 13$ ;  
and  $13 + 1 = \underline{14}$
- 5 (triple) + 2 (single)

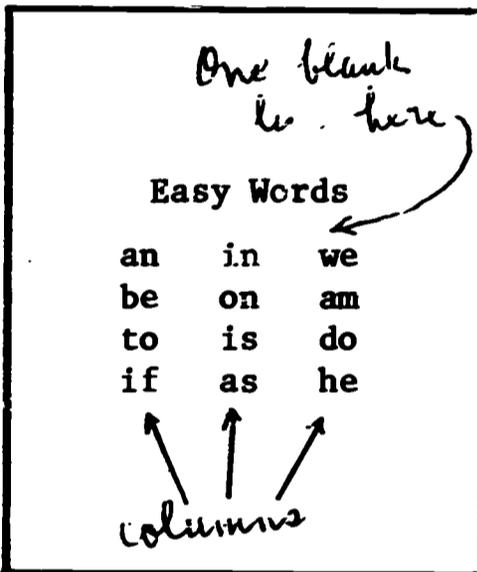
When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to center tables vertically.
2. How to type different kinds of headings.
3. How much vertical spacing to use between the parts of a table.

Section 4

Vertical Centering of Simple Tables

37 Frames



All typing must be attractively arranged on the page--that is, centered. In the table at the left, the TM (top margin) equals the BM (\_\_\_\_\_ margin) and the LM (left margin) equals the RM (\_\_\_\_\_ margin). Also, the space between columns 1 and 2 equals the space between columns \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

bottom  
right  
2 (and) 3

Before reviewing the methods used for horizontal and vertical centering, remember that one types across the page in SPACES but down the page in LINES. In the side margins (left and right), one speaks of the number of \_\_\_\_\_. But in the vertical margins (top and bottom), one speaks of the number of \_\_\_\_\_.

spaces  
lines

Let's review the method of vertical centering. Compare it with making a purchase and then dividing your change equally into two pockets. If you started with \$1 (100 cent<sup>s</sup>) and spent 60¢, you would get \_\_\_\_ ¢ change and would put \_\_\_\_ ¢ into each of the two pockets. Compare the \$1 with the 66 lines on a full sheet of 8½" x 11" paper. If the table (including blank lines within it) used 16 lines, there would remain for vertical margins \_\_\_\_ lines, and half that number, or \_\_\_\_, lines, would be in the top margin. The typing would start 1 line lower, on line no. \_\_\_\_.

40¢  
20¢  
50  
25  
26

In vertical centering:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{Total lines available down the page} \\
 - \text{ Typed + blank lines WITHIN the table} \\
 \hline
 = \text{ Unused lines available for TM and BM}
 \end{array}$$

Use that method with the table in Frame 4-1 (refer to it):

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{Total lines on an 11-inch page} = 11 \times 6 = \underline{\hspace{2cm}} \\
 + \\
 \text{Typed blank lines within Table 4-1} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}} \\
 \hline
 = \text{ Unused lines available for TM and BM} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}
 \end{array}$$

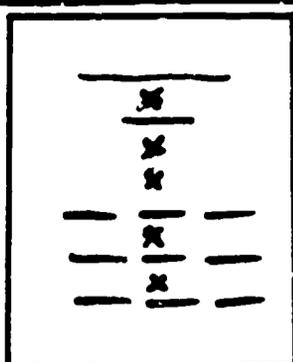
Then: TM = unused lines + 2 = \_\_\_\_ . The first line of typing (the heading) starts on the \_\_\_\_\_ line--on (same/next) line number \_\_\_\_.

66  
6  
60  
30  
next  
31

If there is a line left over after dividing the unused lines in half, do you add it to your top margin?

\_\_\_\_\_ If the table in Frame 4-1 (refer to it) were typed on a half-sheet, containing half of 66, or \_\_\_\_, lines, then the lines available for TM + BM would be \_\_\_\_ minus \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ . Dividing \_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_ results in \_\_\_\_ lines in the TM. The first line of the table (the heading) would be typed on line no. \_\_\_\_.

no  
 33  
 33 - 6 = 27  
 27 (by) 2 (results in) 13  
 14



4-6

To center vertically, first count the number of typed + blank lines within the item.

In the illustration (in which a little x stands for a blank line), the total is \_\_\_\_.

Then, subtract that number from the total lines available on the page. Finally, divide the difference by 2, resulting in the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the (spaces/lines)

\_\_\_\_\_ margin. In centering the illustration above on (top/left)

a FULL sheet, the top margin would have \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?)

\_\_\_\_\_ (spaces/lines)

10  
 lines

top

28 lines  
 (66 - 10) ÷ 2 = 56/2 = 28

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign. 56/2 means 56 ÷ 2.

4-7

The steps in vertical centering are:

1. Count \_\_\_\_\_ (what?)

2. Subtract \_\_\_\_\_ (what from what?)

3. Divide the difference by \_\_\_\_.

4. Start to type on the \_\_\_\_\_ line. (same/next)

1. the number of typed + blank lines within the item
2. that number from the total available (66 on a full sheet, 33 on a 1/2-sheet) (or equivalent answers to 1 and 2)
3. 2
4. next

4-8

SPEEDY TYPISTS (Fifth Week)	
Sue	32
Tom	31
Bess	29

Rows (pointing to Sue, Tom, Bess)

Columns (pointing to Sue, Bess)

A table contains two main sections: (1) HEADING and (2) BODY. In the body of a table, the COLUMNS go down the page and the ROWS go across the page. In the table at the left, the heading section contains \_\_\_\_ typed lines. The body of the table contains \_\_\_\_ rows and \_\_\_\_ columns.

2  
3  
2

Legibility (ease of reading) is important. Therefore, unless the table is a very long one, it is common to double space between the rows in the body of the table. In double spacing, you remember, each pair of typed lines is separated by \_\_\_\_ blank line(s). Refer to the table of Frame 4-8. If the three rows of the body of the table were to be double spaced, the body would use up a total of \_\_\_\_ lines.

1  
5

The number of lines used in double spacing is twice the number of typed lines, minus 1. Four typed lines in double spacing use  $(2 \times 4) - 1 = 8 - 1 = 7$  lines. Six double spaced lines would use \_\_\_\_ lines. Nine double spaced lines would use \_\_\_\_ lines.

11  
17

Perhaps you remember that the two main sections of a table are called the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_. Perhaps you also remember that the horizontal entries are called \_\_\_\_\_ and that the vertical entries are called \_\_\_\_\_.

heading  
body  
(either order)  
rows  
columns

Let's use SS as the abbreviation for single space, single spaces, single spaced, and single spacing. With D for double and T for triple, DS stands for \_\_\_\_\_ space, spaces, spaced, or spacing. TS stands for \_\_\_\_\_ space, spaces, spaced, or \_\_\_\_\_. 4Ss would mean four \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; 2DS would mean two \_\_\_\_\_.

double  
triple  
spacing  
single  
double spaces

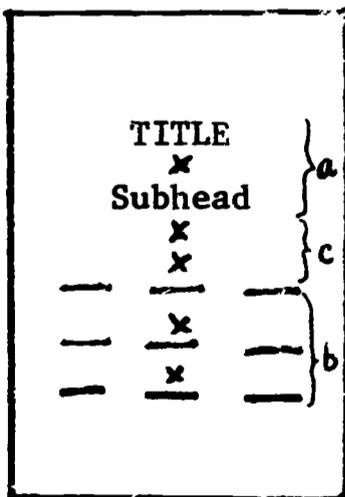
SALES RECORD	
	x
May 1969	x
	x
Jones	x \$8,000
Smith	x 4,000
Crane	x 3,250

Another name for heading is title. One speaks of a table heading or of a table \_\_\_\_\_. (Headings are also called "heads," for short.) In addition, a heading can have several parts: a MAJOR head and one or more MINOR or SUBHEADS.

In the table above, the title or major head is \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_. The minor or subhead is \_\_\_\_\_.

Notice that the rows in the body and the two heads are \_\_\_\_\_ and that a TS is used after the \_\_\_\_\_ (SS/DS/TS) (what part?)

title  
SALES RECORD  
May 1969  
DS  
minor head(ing)  
[or subhead(ing)]



Examine the vertical spacing in the illustration (a) within the heading section, (b) within the body section, and (c) between the two main sections. You can see that in comparison to the blank space within the sections marked a and b, the space between the two main sections--marked c--is \_\_\_\_\_ (less/the same/greater).

greater

4-15

The two main sections of a table are the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_. For the sake of attractive appearance, always leave more blank space \_\_\_\_\_ (between/within) sections than \_\_\_\_\_ sections. If the body of a table is SS, then \_\_\_\_\_ (SS/DS) after the heading. If the body of a table is DS, then \_\_\_\_\_ (SS/DS/TS) after the heading.

heading  
body  
(either order)

between

within

DS

TS

4-16

INVENTORY  
For Branch Offices in  
Dallas, Chicago

The illustration at the left shows only the heading section of a table. In it, the subhead or \_\_\_\_\_ head contains \_\_\_\_\_ lines. Because the information in the subhead belongs together, it is typed in \_\_\_\_\_. Also, be-

cause 1 blank line separates the major heading or \_\_\_\_\_ from the subhead, between the subhead and the body there will be at least \_\_\_\_\_ blank lines.  
(how many?)

minor

2

SS

title

2

4-17

Blank lines usually separate one part of a heading from another. An additional way to distinguish the parts is through the use of SOLID CAPITALS (solid caps, for short), as well as of Initial Caps (for the first letter of each important word). In the illustration in the preceding frame (4-16), the title uses \_\_\_\_\_ caps, but the minor head uses \_\_\_\_\_ caps. Notice also that each of the two subhead lines is \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Blocked (lined up) at the left
- b. Centered horizontally



Most people think b

4-21

Most people find a long string of solid caps difficult to read (because all letters are the same height). Therefore, avoid solid caps except when the item is quite short or to distinguish one part of a heading from another, as in:

ACME, INC.	<u>or</u>	Acme, Inc.
Inventory Sale		INVENTORY SALE

If a table title is long or if there are no subheads to be distinguished from major heads, it is better to use \_\_\_\_\_ caps.

(solid/initial)

initial

4-22

A long table title (one that requires more than 4-5 words)

\_\_\_\_\_ use solid caps. If a table title (should/should not)

uses solid caps, that title \_\_\_\_\_ be (should/should not)

underscored.

should not  
should not

4-23

In a table heading, give the greatest prominence to the most important information (by using solid caps). Use initial caps for the less important parts of a heading.

Of the two illustrations in Frame 4-21 (refer to it), the better one is the one at the \_\_\_\_\_.

(left/right)

right

4-24

The table whose headings were just discussed will contain information about the inventory sale, not about the firm (Acme, Inc.). That is why the version at the right (in Frame 4-21) is preferred. In it, the major head or title is in \_\_\_\_\_ caps and it appears \_\_\_\_\_ (solid/initial) \_\_\_\_\_ (before/after) the minor head. A major head usually comes before a minor head, but can it sometimes follow the minor head? \_\_\_\_\_

solid  
after  
yes

4-25

Compare these four table headings:

- a. 1969 Enrolment Figures at Taft High School
- b. 1969 ENROLMENT FIGURES AT TAFT HIGH SCHOOL

- c. Taft High School  
1969 ENROLMENT FIGURES

- d. TAFT HIGH SCHOOL  
1969 Enrolment Figures

As between a and b, the preferred one is \_\_\_\_.

As between c and d, the preferred one is \_\_\_\_.

- a (because it is too long for solid caps)
- c (because it uses solid caps for the more important information)

4-26

In the preceding frame, headings a and c are preferred. In choosing between a and c, select the one whose width is closer to the width of the columns in the body of the table. If the columns containing the enrolment information required about 20-25 spaces (including spaces between columns), the preferred heading would be (a/c).

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 4-37.]

c (because its length is closer than the length of heading a to the 20-25 spaces in the body of the table)

In the tables used so far in this section the information in the columns is obvious from the table title or subhead. More often, it is desirable and helpful to label the information in each column by using a column heading (abbreviated CH). The heading of the second column in the table at the left shows that 134 is Kent's \_\_\_\_\_ . Are CHs underscored? \_\_\_\_\_ Are they centered in relation to their columns? \_\_\_\_\_

CONTEST WINNERS	
<u>Name</u>	<u>Score</u>
Kent	134
Wilson	114
Cox	93
Grant	90

iated CH). The heading of the second column in the table at the left shows that 134 is Kent's \_\_\_\_\_ . Are CHs underscored? \_\_\_\_\_ Are they centered in relation to their columns? \_\_\_\_\_

score  
yes  
yes

	<u>Number of Bushels</u> (in Millions)	<u>NUMBER OF BUSHELS</u> (IN MILLIONS)
<u>Compare:</u>		

The CH at the left is correct. That CH shows that: (a) Underscoring \_\_\_\_\_ the space between words. (includes/excludes) (b) CHs use \_\_\_\_\_ caps. In a CH of more than 1 line, (c) the lines are \_\_\_\_\_, and (d) you underscore \_\_\_\_\_ line across the width of \_\_\_\_\_ (each/the bottom) \_\_\_\_\_ (each/the bottom/the longest) line in the CH.

includes  
initial  
SS  
the bottom  
the longest

1. SALE PRICE
2. Number of Males
3. Inventory No.
4. Shipping Cost
5. Cost of Goods
6. Average Temperature  
(in Degrees)

Of the six column headings at the left, the correct ones are Nos. \_\_\_\_\_ .

2, 4

4-30

Compare the two sets of column headings below.

City	Average Annual Rainfall	Average Temperature	City	Average Annual Rainfall	Average Temperature
------	-------------------------------	------------------------	------	-------------------------------	------------------------

The set of CHs at the right, above, is correct. The rule is (a/b).

- a. Start all column heads on the top line of the CH that uses the largest number of lines.
- b. End all column heads on the last line of the CH that uses the largest number of lines.

b

4-31

<u>Price</u>	<u>Price</u>
\$18	\$18
14	
7	14
5	
3	7

Both of the columns at the left are correct. They show that no matter what spacing is used between rows (SS or DS), the CH is always followed by (how many?)

blank line(s). That is, between the CH and the first row of the body, you (SS/DS).

\*With 1½ spacing between rows (on a halfspace typewriter), 1½ (or double) spacing after the CH is permissible.

1  
DS

4-32

1	INVENTORY SALE		
2			
3	March 1969		
4			
5			
6	<u>Stock</u>		
7	<u>No.</u>	<u>Item</u>	<u>Price</u>
9	142	Desk	\$42
11	037	Easy Chair	98
13	568	Throw Rug	17
15	090	Seat Pad	4

You should be able to tell from the vertical spacing between the parts of the table (shown by the numbered line count) that column headings are considered to be part of the (neading/body) section of a table.

body (because there is more blank space above the CHs than below them)

4-33

Some typists take longer than necessary to count the number of lines in a table. Here's a time-saver when the rows in the table are to be DS. Starting with the first line of the title, count down by 1's until you reach the last CH line; thereafter, count by 2's. Look at the numbered line count at the left of the table in Frame 4-32. It shows that the last CH line is line no. \_\_\_\_\_. After that, the line count shows that you should continue to count down by \_\_\_\_\_.

(1's/2's)

7  
2's

4-34

Kent High School		Notice the vertical spacing in the table at the left. <u>Within</u> sections (heading and _____), _____ is used. <u>Between</u> sections, _____ is used. If centered on a half-sheet, the first line of typing would be on line no. ____; if centered on a full sheet, on line no. ____.
1969 ENROLMENT FIGURES		
<u>Department</u>	<u>No.</u>	
English	1,125	
Business	782	
History	614	
Mathematics	493	
Science	377	

body  
DS  
TS

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign. 12/2 means 12 ÷ 2.

<sup>9</sup> [33 - 16) ÷ 2 =  
17/2 = 8; and  
8 + 1 = 9]

<sup>26</sup> [(66 - 16) ÷ 2 =  
50/2 = 25; and  
25 + 1 = 26]

4-35

Now a little TEST -----

1. The two major sections of a table are the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Always leave more blank space \_\_\_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_\_ (between/within) the two main sections. \_\_\_\_\_ (between/within)
3. Information in a table is presented across the page in \_\_\_\_\_ and down the page in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If an item in a table is typed in solid caps, it \_\_\_\_\_ also be underscored. \_\_\_\_\_ (should/should not)

(Test continued in the next frame.)

TEST continued

- 1. heading body (either order)
- 2. between within
- 3. rows columns
- 4. should not

- 5. Another name for major head is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Another name for minor head is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. A table containing 13 (typed + blank) lines, if typed on a half-sheet, would begin on line no. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. A table containing 25 (typed + blank) lines, if typed on a full sheet, would begin on line no. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. In the example at the right  
the major head is the one on \_\_\_\_\_  
line (1/2).

Green & Co.  
HOLIDAY SALE PRICES

(Test continued in the next frame.)

- 5. title
- 6. subhead
- 7. 11  
[(33 - 13) ÷ 2 = 20/2 = 10;  
and 10 + 1 = 11]
- 8. 21  
[(66 - 25) ÷ 2 = 41/2 = 20;  
and 20 + 1 = 21]
- 9. 2

TEST continued

1	Office Assignments	
2	May 1, 1969	
3	<u>Department</u>	<u>Room</u>
4	Executive	204
5	Sales	212
6	Purchasing	206
7	Accounting	219
8	Shipping	140

- In the table at the left:
- 10. You could use either solid caps or initial caps + under-scoring for line no. \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 11. What vertical spacing (SS, DS, or TS) should be used--
    - a. Between lines 1 and 2? \_\_\_\_\_
    - b. Between lines 2 and 3? \_\_\_\_\_
    - c. Between lines 3 and 4? \_\_\_\_\_
    - d. Within lines 4-8? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 12. If typed on a full sheet with correct vertical spacing, the title would start on line \_\_\_\_\_.

- 10. 1
- 11a. DS
- b. TS
- c. DS
- d. DS
- 12. 26  
[(66-16) ÷ 2 = 50/2 = 25;  
and 25 + 1 = 26]

When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to center horizontally--by backspacing--tables without column headings.
2. How to check your centering before you type.
3. How to find the starting point for each column.
4. How to type tables so that they will be attractively centered on the page.

Section 5

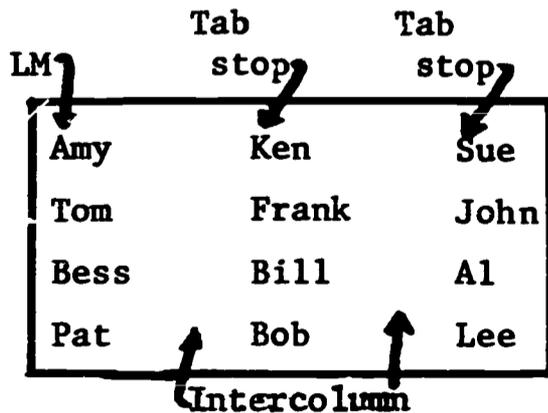
Tables without Column Headings  
(Backspace Method)

40 Frames

An attractively typed table is one that is centered horizontally as well as \_\_\_\_\_. You know that a horizontally centered item is one whose \_\_\_\_\_ margins are equal.

A table displays information in rows and columns. Perhaps you remember that the columns go \_\_\_\_\_ the page, (across/down) while the rows go \_\_\_\_\_ the page. (across/down)

vertically  
side  
(or left and right)  
down  
across



Examine the table at the left. It has \_\_\_\_ rows and \_\_\_\_ columns. The first column begins at the LM (\_\_\_\_\_ margin). At the beginning of each column after that, you set a \_\_\_\_\_.

Just as you jump 5 spaces to the beginning of a paragraph by tabulating, you also jump from column to column by \_\_\_\_\_ across the inter \_\_\_\_\_ space-- the space between columns.

4  
3  
left  
tab stop  
tabulating  
(inter)column

Massachusetts	Mass.	MA
Michigan	Mich.	MI
Minnesota	Minn.	MN
Mississippi	Miss.	MS
Missouri	Mo.	MO

You type a table across the rows, NOT down the \_\_\_\_\_. After you type Massachusetts in the table above, the next thing you type is \_\_\_\_\_. After you type Minn., the next thing you type is \_\_\_\_\_.

columns  
Mass.  
MN

The columns in a table should not be so close together that they look jammed; nor should they be so far apart as to cause difficulty in reading from column to \_\_\_\_\_. Often, about a 1/2 inch between columns--(how many?) \_\_\_\_ pica or \_\_\_\_ elite spaces--will be about right. Of course, in a table with many or wide columns, the IC (intercolumn) space might have to be \_\_\_\_\_ than a half-inch. In (more/less) a table with just a few or very narrow columns, you could use \_\_\_\_\_ than a half-inch of \_\_\_\_\_ space. (more/less) (abbreviation)

column  
5  
6  
less  
more  
IC

Think of a table as containing two elements:  
1. Typed matter--the material in the columns.  
2. IC space--the space between \_\_\_\_\_.  
To center and type a table, you must locate:  
a. The point on the carriage scale at which the first column begins--the \_\_\_\_\_ margin, and  
b. The points at which each later column should begin--so that you can set a \_\_\_\_\_ for each of the later columns.

columns  
left  
tab stop

5-6

Orchestra	Monday	Mr. Henderson
Economics Club	Tuesday	Miss Cantor
Glee Club	Wednesday	Mr. Stillman

To center a table horizontally, you first have to determine how many spaces wide it is. To do that, you first identify the longest item in each column. The sum of the spaces in the longest items + all IC space is the total width of the table.

The total width of the table above is: its IC space + the spaces in Economics Club + the spaces in \_\_\_\_\_ + the spaces in \_\_\_\_\_.

Wednesday  
Mr. Henderson

5-7

Tables can be centered horizontally in any of three ways: (a) by backspacing, (b) by arithmetic, or (c) by a combination of backspacing and arithmetic. You already know how to center horizontally by backspacing. You start at the center point (at \_\_\_\_ on a pica machine, at \_\_\_\_ on an elite typewriter). Then you backspace \_\_\_\_\_ for each \_\_\_\_ letters, characters, and spaces in the line.

42  
51  
once  
2

5-8

The fastest and safest way to center the body of a table by backspacing is:

1. First, backspace for the typed matter across all columns.
2. Next, backspace for all IC spaces.

To center the typed matter, first identify the longest item in each column. Consider:

Maine	New England	Augusta
Ohio	Midwest	Columbus
Washington	Far West	Olympia

In column 1, the longest item is \_\_\_\_\_; in column 2, \_\_\_\_\_; in column 3, \_\_\_\_\_.

Washington  
New England  
Columbus

5-9

Be especially careful when identifying the longest item in longhand materials. The item that stretches the longest may not have the most spaces. Check by counting.

President Johnson  
Secretary Williams  
Comptroller Sanders

In column 1, the longest item is \_\_\_\_\_; it has \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. In column 2, the longest item is \_\_\_\_\_; it has \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

Comptroller

11

Williams

8

5-10

Jim	Al	Frank
James	Fred	Andy
Tom	Van	Bob
<u>5</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>4</u>
<u>5</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>5</u>

Consider the body of a table to have a "longest line"--made up of the sum of the longest items in each column + all IC space.

In the table above, the longest line consists of the under-scored typed matter (James + Fred + Frank) plus the dotted IC space. As shown above, the typed matter has 5 + \_\_\_\_\_ + 5 = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, and the ICs contain 3 + \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, for a total in the "longest line" of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

Temporarily ignoring IC space, the longest line in Frame 5-8 consists of: Washington + New England + Columbus. In Frame 5-9 (refer to it), the typed matter in the longest line consists of \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_.

4

14

(3 +) 3 = 6

20

Comptroller

Williams

5-11

Your first step is to determine the starting point for the first column, so that you can set your \_\_\_\_\_ margin. Consider the longest line of the table of Frame 5-8 (not counting IC space) as:

WashingtonNew EnglandColumbus

Starting at midpoint (42 or 51), backspace "1 for 2"--

Wa sh in gt on Ne w-space En gl an dC ol um bu

Notice that you do not backspace for the final leftover letter (the s of Columbus) and that the d of England is paired with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the word \_\_\_\_\_, because intercolumn space is, at this stage, \_\_\_\_\_ (included/ignored)

left  
C  
Columbus  
ignored

5-12

COUNT ON YOUR FINGERS AS YOU BACKSPACE MENTALLY for ComptrollerWilliams (Frame 5-9). The sixth PAIR of letters in backspacing for ComptrollerWilliams consists of the letters \_\_\_\_\_. The last pair consists of the letters \_\_\_\_\_. There will be a total of \_\_\_\_\_ backspaces, with (how many?) \_\_\_\_\_ leftover letter(s). (one/no)

rW  
am  
9  
one

5-13

In backspacing for ComptrollerWilliams in elite type, you would backspace 9 times from 51, ending at  $51 - 9 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . Having backspaced for the typed matter, you must next backspace for the IC. Assuming 8 spaces between the two columns, and backspacing 1 for 2, you would backspace half of 8, or more times. That would bring you to \_\_\_\_\_ on the scale. In pica type, you would start to backspace from \_\_\_\_\_, and would backspace 9 times for the typed matter + \_\_\_\_\_ times for the IC. Your backspacing would end at \_\_\_\_\_.

42  
4  
38  
42  
4  
29 (42 - 13)

5-14

Suppose you wanted to leave 5, instead of 8, spaces between columns in the preceding example. Since you drop a leftover letter or space, in centering 5 IC spaces you would ordinarily backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times. However, there was 1 leftover letter after backspacing for the typed matter (the final s of Williams). That s--and the fifth space of the 5 IC spaces--make another pair. Therefore, 5 IC spaces + the leftover s make a total of 6 spaces to be centered. After backspacing for the typed matter, you must therefore backspace \_\_\_\_\_ more times.

2  
3

5-15

A 2-column table has 1 intercolumn. A 5-column table has 4 ICs. A 7-column table has \_\_\_\_ ICs. The number of ICs is always \_\_\_\_\_ the number of columns. To get total IC space, multiply the width of the IC by the number of \_\_\_\_\_. A 4-column table with a 6-space IC uses  $6 \times \frac{3}{4} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  IC spaces. To center those spaces, you would backspace half that number, or \_\_\_\_\_, times.

6  
one less than  
intercolumns  
(6 x) 3 = 18  
9 (½ of 18)

5-16

When you backspace first for the typed matter and next for all IC space, you must be sure not to throw away 2 leftover spaces (1 in the typed matter and 1 in the intercolumns). Assume a table with three 5-space ICs in which there was a leftover space after backspacing for the typed matter. The leftover space plus the total of \_\_\_\_ IC spaces make a total of \_\_\_\_ spaces to be centered by backspacing. You would therefore backspace \_\_\_\_ more times.

15 (3 x 5)  
16  
8 (½ of 16)

5-17

Assume a table with a leftover space in the typed matter and two 7-space ICs. To center the total of 14 IC spaces, you would backspace \_\_\_\_ times. If you were to add the leftover space, making 15, you would still backspace \_\_\_\_ times. In other words, when the IC total is an even number, the leftover space from the typed matter should be \_\_\_\_\_ --because the number of backspaces needed (added/dropped) for centering \_\_\_\_\_ be changed. (would/would not)



left  
 50  
 10  
 60 (50 + 10)  
 30 (½ of 60)  
 21 (51 - 30)  
 left margin

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar is also a division sign. 18/2 means 18 ÷ 2.

<sup>9</sup> [½ of (3 x 6) = 18/2 = 9]

9 (from) 30  
 21

typed matter  
 total IC space  
 half the IC space (from)  
 the point on the scale at which the backspacing for the typed matter ends  
 (or equivalent to the above answers)

The steps in the backspace method are:

1. From the center point, backspace 1 for 2 for the typed matter.
2. Then backspace for half the IC total; OR subtract half the IC total from the point on the scale at which the backspacing for the typed matter ends.

Assume a table in which backspacing for the typed matter ends at 30 on the scale. If there were three 6-space ICs, backspace \_\_\_\_ more times, or subtract \_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_ and move your carriage directly to \_\_\_\_ on the scale.

To locate the left margin in a table by the backspace method, backspace (1 for 2)--first for the \_\_\_\_\_ and then for the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 OR, after Step 1, subtract \_\_\_\_\_ (what?)  
 from \_\_\_\_\_ (what?)

Errors in locating the LM could result from:

1. Poor backspacing technique (not depressing the key fully or punching it too hard).
2. Incorrectly identifying the longest item in each column.
3. Faulty spelling by 2's during backspacing.
4. Wrong arithmetic (in multiplying IC space by number of ICs or in forgetting leftover spaces).
5. Confusion about the steps in the backspace process.

If reason No. 5 applies to you now, you should         .  
 (a/b)  
 a. Just go on and hope for the best.  
 b. Review Frames 1 to 22 in this section.

b

Now a little TEST, based on the table below.

5-24

John B. Cook	460 Bullitt Drive	San Antonio
Arthur Heason	86 Lake Blvd.	Wilmington
Alice Stevenson	14 Seventh Ave.	New York

1. The longest item in column 1 has \_\_\_\_ spaces; in column 2, \_\_\_\_ spaces; in column 3, \_\_\_\_ spaces.
2. Count on your fingers and backspace mentally to determine that, in backspacing for the typed matter, the eighth backspace would be for the letters \_\_\_\_\_. At the end, would there be a leftover space? \_\_\_\_\_

Note. If a typewriter is available, continue with the next three frames. If not, wait until you are at a typewriter.

1. 15 (Alice Stevenson)  
17 (460 Bullitt Drive)  
11 (San Antonio)

2. n4  
yes

5-25

Before you do any typing--in fact, before you start to backspace to find the LM of a table--be sure to set your margins to the extreme left and right of the carriage and to clear all tab stops. Otherwise, earlier machine settings will get in the way of your present work. Your first steps are:

1. Move margins \_\_\_\_\_ (where?)
2. Clear \_\_\_\_\_ (what?)

1. to extreme left and right of the carriage
2. all tab stops

5-26

At a (home, school, or office) typewriter, backspace to find the LM for each of the tables below. Remember to backspace first for all typed matter, then for all IC space. One by one, check the end point of your backspacing against the model answers. The space in each IC is at the right.

(1)	California Indiana	Sacramento Indianapolis	9
(2)	Maine Washington	New England Far West	Augusta Olympic 6
(3)	Missouri Montana	Mo. Mont.	MO MN 4,319,813 674,767 7

	<u>Pica</u>	<u>Elite</u>
(1)	27	36
(2)	22	31
(3)	20	29

5-27

See the instructions for Frame 5-26.

(4)	Typing Shorthand	Italian French	Algebra Geometry	History Civics	7
-----	---------------------	-------------------	---------------------	-------------------	---

---

(5)	Kennedy Johnson Nixon	Massachusetts Texas California	Democrat Democrat Republican	1961 1963 1969	5
-----	-----------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------------------	----------------------	---

---

(6)	<i>Independence Day</i>		<i>July 4</i>		11
	<i>Veterans Day</i>		<i>November 11</i>		

---

(7)	1903 1953	Marie Curie Winston Churchill	Physics Literature	8
-----	--------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------	---

[Stop here, or continue through 5-32 or 5-40.]

	<u>Pica</u>	<u>Elite</u>
(4)	16	25

(Did you remember to add the leftover space to the IC total?)

(5)	18	27
(6)	23	32
(7)	19	28

5-28

Now we turn to the actual typing of tables whose LMs have been located by the backspace method. Consider:

California	Sacramento	15,707,204
Ohio	Columbus	9,706,397
Kansas	Topeka	2,178,611
Delaware	Dover	446,292

The table above has \_\_\_\_ rows and \_\_\_\_ columns. In typing it, you work **ACROSS THE ROWS**, not down the columns. After you type California, the next thing you type is \_\_\_\_\_ (Ohio/Sacramento). After you type Topeka, the next thing you type is \_\_\_\_\_.

4  
3  
Sacramento  
2,178,611

5-29

Assume pica type and a 6-space intercolumn in the table of Frame 5-28. If that table were to be centered horizontally by backspacing, the backspacing would end at 21 on the carriage scale. The point at which the backspacing ends is the point at which the first column begins. Therefore, you would set your \_\_\_\_\_ margin at \_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

left  
21

5-30

You work across the rows by tabulating from column to column. Therefore, after setting your LM and typing California (see 5-28), you want to find the point at which the second column begins--so that you can set a tab stop at that point. With a 6-space IC (intercolumn), after you type California in column \_\_\_\_\_, just space \_\_\_\_\_ times and \_\_\_\_\_ for column \_\_\_\_\_.

1  
6  
set a tab stop  
2

5-31

(Refer to the table of Frame 5-28.)  
Having set a tab stop for column 2, you next type \_\_\_\_\_ . Then space for the IC and \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ for column \_\_\_\_\_. Then type \_\_\_\_\_.

Sacramento  
set a tab stop  
3  
15,707,204

5-32

With row 1 complete and all tab stops set, check your line space regulator. If you want a blank line separating the rows of the table (as is done in most tables that are not very long), set your regulator for \_\_\_\_\_ spacing. Then just throw your \_\_\_\_\_ and type across each \_\_\_\_\_ in turn, tabulating from the end of one \_\_\_\_\_ to the beginning of the next one. For example, when you finish typing Ohio in the first column of row 2 (see Frame 5-28), you \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Space for the IC (a/b)
- b. Tabulate to column 2

[Stop here, or continue through 5-41.]

double carriage row column

b

2

3

2

3

before

5-33

In the table of Frame 5-28 the longest item in each column is in the first row. That rarely happens in real life. More often, the longest items are in various rows, as in:

Georgia	South	Atlanta
Washington	Far West	Olympia
Maine	New England	Augusta
Ohio	Midwest	Columbus

The longest item in column 1 is in row \_\_\_\_\_. In column 2, the longest item is in row \_\_\_\_\_.\*

\*For the purpose of planning and typing tables, it does not matter in what row the longest item in the last column is located.

5-34

For the beginner at table typing, the safe way to work is to set all tab stops before any typing is done. In the table of the preceding frame (refer to it), you would set tab stops for columns \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ you type Georgia. (before/after)

5-35

For the table below, pica LM = 20 and each IC = 8 spaces.

Georgia	South	Atlanta
Washington	Far West	Olympia
Maine	New England	Augusta
Ohio	Midwest	Columbus

The first tab stop, for column \_\_\_\_\_, will be set 8 spaces after the longest item in column 1, which is \_\_\_\_\_. Here's how to set tab stops before typing: From LM at 20, spell through the longest item in column 1 letter by letter as you tap the space bar once for EACH letter. That will require \_\_\_\_\_ space bar strokes.

2  
Washington  
10

5-36

Having tapped your space bar 10 times, once for each letter in Washington, another 8 taps (for the IC) will bring you to the beginning of column \_\_\_\_\_. Set a \_\_\_\_\_ at that point.

Notice (preceding frame) that the longest item in column 2 is \_\_\_\_\_. Again, space your way through it by tapping your space bar \_\_\_\_\_ times. Add another 8 taps for the IC and \_\_\_\_\_ for column \_\_\_\_\_.

2  
tab stop  
New England  
11  
set a tab stop  
3

5-37

(Refer to Frame 5-35.)

So far, you have set tab stops for columns 2 and 3, but have not typed any of the items in the table. Now you are ready to type. To type the first-row items that you had previously spaced through (while spelling letter by letter): **WITHOUT SPACING DOWN**, push your carriage back to the \_\_\_\_\_ margin, type \_\_\_\_\_; then \_\_\_\_\_ (space/tabulate) to column \_\_\_\_\_ and type \_\_\_\_\_; then \_\_\_\_\_ to column \_\_\_\_\_ and type \_\_\_\_\_.

left  
Georgia  
tabulate  
2  
South  
tabulate  
3  
Atlanta

5-38

With the items in row 1 typed, and all tab stops set, if you want a blank line between rows, set your line space regulator for \_\_\_\_\_ spacing. Then just throw your \_\_\_\_\_ and type across each \_\_\_\_\_ in turn, tabulating from the end of one \_\_\_\_\_ to the beginning of the next one.

double  
carriage  
row  
column

Now a little TEST (assume LM properly set and that you 5-39  
----- now want to set tab stops). -----

Ohio	Columbus	Cleveland
Delaware	Dover	Wilmington
Kansas	Topeka	Kansas City

1. First, \_\_\_\_\_  
(type/space through) (what item?)
2. Then, after spacing for the IC, \_\_\_\_\_ for  
column \_\_\_\_\_. Next, \_\_\_\_\_  
(type/space through) (what item?)
3. When you first reach column 3 (after spacing for the IC),  
\_\_\_\_\_. Then, \_\_\_\_\_ the car-  
(throw/push back)  
riage to type \_\_\_\_\_.

1. space through  
Delaware
2. set a tab stop (for)  
column 2  
space through Columbus
3. set a tab stop  
push back  
Ohio

TEST continued (refer to Frame 5-39). 5-40  
-----

4. With an IC of 10 spaces, the "longest line" (all typing  
plus all IC spaces) contains \_\_\_\_ spaces.
  - a. To center the longest line in elite type, you would  
backspace \_\_\_\_ times. LM would be at \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. In pica type, with IC = 7, to center the longest line  
you would backspace \_\_\_\_ times, resulting in LM at  
\_\_\_\_\_.

4. 47 (27 typing + 20 IC)  
(Longest items are:  
Delaware, Columbus,  
Kansas City--using  
8, 8, and 11 spaces.)
  - 4a. 23 (½ of 47)  
28 (51 - 23)
  - 4b. 20  
[½ of (27 typing +  
14 IC)]  
22 (42 - 20)

When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to center horizontally--by backspacing--tables with column headings.
2. How to center each column heading in relation to its column.
3. How to type tables with column headings by using forward and backspace methods.

Section 6

Tables with Column Headings  
(Backspace Method)

26 Frames

<u>Item</u>	<u>Special Price</u>
Ladies' gloves	\$ 6
Men's hats	14

To locate the LM (left margin) of a table, you know that you backspace 1 for 2 for the longest item in each column + IC space. In identifying the longest item, consider the CH (column heading) to be part of the column. For example, the longest item in column 2, above, is its CH, \_\_\_\_\_, containing \_\_\_\_ spaces. With 14 spaces in the longest item in column 1, the total for the typed matter is \_\_\_\_ spaces.

Special Price

13  
27 (14 + 13)

In the table of the preceding frame, the longest "typed matter" is: Ladies' glovesSpecial Price. Backspace it as:

La di es '-space gl ov es Sp ec ia l-space Pr ic  
with \_\_\_\_\_ leftover letter(s). For it, you would back-  
(one/no)

space (count the pairs above) \_\_\_\_ times. For an IC (intercolumn) of 7 spaces, you would backspace (was there a leftover letter?) another \_\_\_\_ times, for a total of \_\_\_\_ backspaces. In pica type, your LM (left margin) would be at \_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

one  
 13  
 4 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (7 + 1)]  
 17  
 25 (42 - 17)

<u>State</u>	<u>Population</u>	<u>Capital City</u>
North Dakota	632,446	Bismarck
Delaware	446,292	Dover

In column 1, the longest item has \_\_\_ spaces; in column 2, \_\_\_ spaces; in column 3, \_\_\_ spaces--for a total in the typed matter of \_\_\_ spaces, requiring \_\_\_ backspaces to center it. With IC = 8 (and 2 ICs), you would backspace another \_\_\_ times, for a total of \_\_\_ backspaces. In elite type, your IM (left margin) would be at \_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

12 (North Dakota)  
 10 (Population)  
12 (Capital City)  
 34  
 17 ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of 34)  
8 ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of 16)  
 25  
 26 (51 - 25)

You have surely noticed that column headings are centered in relation to their columns, as in:

<u>Continent</u>	<u>Area</u> (in Square Miles)
Africa	11,685,000
North America	9,420,000

A shorter heading is centered \_\_\_\_\_ a longer column.  
 (under/over)

A shorter column is centered \_\_\_\_\_ a longer heading.  
 (under/over)

over  
 under

<u>Inventory No.</u>	<u>Item</u>
264	Dining table
302	Side Chair

The orderly way to type a table is: first, all the column headings; then, the rows below--setting tab stops as you get to them. After you type (and underscore) the heading of column 1 (+ 10 spaces for the IC), you have reached the beginning of column 2--you are at the point on the scale at which \_\_\_\_\_ will begin. Should you now set a tab stop? \_\_\_\_\_

Dining table  
yes

Inventory No.

Item

264  
302

Dining table  
side chair

You have typed Inventory No., spaced 10 times for the IC, and set a tab stop for column 2. Horizontally, you are at the D of Dining table; but vertically you are still on the heading line above. Since you should type all CHs before you type the rows beneath, you now want to locate the point at which \_\_\_\_\_ should be typed. You have to find the middle of column 2, so that from that point you can center \_\_\_\_\_ by backspacing 1 for 2.

Item (or the CH)  
Item (or the CH)

Item  
Dining table

To center a short line over (or under) a longer line, you first have to find the middle of the longer line. At the left, above, the longer line is \_\_\_\_\_. To find its middle, you start at its beginning and forward space 1 for 2 (tap your space bar once for each two typewriter strokes in it). Since you have just set a tab stop at the beginning of \_\_\_\_\_, to find its middle tap your space bar \_\_\_\_\_ time(s).

Note. The fast way to fill in blanks like the last one is to count on your fingers as you spell mentally by 2's.

Dining table  
Dining table  
6

Inventory No.

Item

264  
302

Dining table  
side chair

You have forward spaced 6 times into the middle of Dining table. Now you want to center \_\_\_\_\_ above it. Since that CH has \_\_\_\_\_ letters, you find its starting (how many?) point by backspacing 1 for 2 \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). Now type that CH. So far, you have typed the two CHs and set a tab stop for column 2. Now you return to column 1 to center its \_\_\_\_\_ its \_\_\_\_\_ (heading/column) (over/under) (heading/column).

Item  
4  
2  
Column under (its)  
heading

Inventory No.

264  
302  
419  
578  
617

6-9

At the left is just the beginning of a much longer first column in a table. The CH is typed once--but you will be returning the carriage many times to type the items beneath the CH.

You have typed the long CH and want to find the starting point for the shorter items below. First, find the middle of the longer item by forward spacing (1 for 2) \_\_\_\_\_ times. Then, to find the starting point for 264, backspace \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). NOW: based on the comments at the beginning of this frame, you should \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a/b) a. Set a tab stop
- b. Reset the LM

6  
1  
b

6-10

Some machine settings are temporary. NEVER KEEP a margin or a tab stop at a point at which only one item begins.

If, in column 1, the CH is longest, after typing it--re \_ \_ \_ the \_\_\_\_\_. The same principle applies to column tab stops. In the column at the right

the \$ is typed _____ time(s). The tab stop should	<u>Price</u>
therefore be set at the _____ of \$14--under the	\$14
(\$/1/4)	9
_____ of <u>Price</u> . If so, when you first tabulate	12
(r/i)	35
	6

to that column, you must remember to backspace \_\_\_\_\_ time(s) to type the \_\_\_\_\_.

(re)set (the) left margin

1  
1  
i  
1  
\$

6-11

REMEMBER: To find the starting point for a line that is to be centered in relation to another line, forward space (1 for 2) into the middle of the longer line; then backspace (1 for 2) for the shorter line.

<u>Model</u>	<u>Sale Price</u>
Evergreen	\$23.95
Clanchester	18.50

1. To center Model, first find the middle of \_\_\_\_\_ by forward spacing \_\_\_\_\_ times; then backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times.

2. To locate the \$ in column 2, forward space \_\_\_\_\_ times; then backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times.

3. Set a tab stop for column 2 at the \_\_\_\_\_ of \$23.95 (\$/2)

- 1. Clanchester  
5  
2
- 2. 5  
3
- 3. 2  
(because the \$ will be typed only once)

The orderly way to type is: first, all the CHs; then, the rows beneath. In the preceding frame (refer to it), with LM set and Model centered and typed, you must next find the starting point for \_\_\_\_\_ . Since (Sale Price/\$23.95) you want to stay on the same line, \_\_\_\_\_ the (throw/push back) carriage to LM and FORWARD SPACE 1 for 1 (without typing the word) through the longest item in column 1, which is \_\_\_\_\_, + the IC space. Then type \_\_\_\_\_.

Sale Price  
push back  
Clanchester  
Sale Price

To continue the work in an orderly way: after typing the two CHs of the table of Frame 6-11 (refer to it), you need to set a tab stop for column \_\_\_\_ . You locate the \$ of \$23.95 as described in sentence No. 2 of Frame 6-11--and you set a tab stop \_\_\_\_\_ . (there/1 space to the right)

[Stop here, or continue through 6-19 or 6-26.]

- 2
- 1 space to the right  
(because the \$ will be typed only once)

What if the CH is the longest item in column 1? Your first step is still to find the LM by backspacing for the longest item in each column + the IC space.

<u>Stock No.</u>	<u>Item</u>
603	Side chair
417	Sofa

Find the LM by backspacing 1 for 2 for Stock No. + \_\_\_\_\_ + IC. Then type \_\_\_\_\_ . Now space for the IC and \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a. Type Item
- b. Set a tab stop for Side chair

Side chair  
Stock No.

b

6-15

In the table of 6-14 (refer to it), you have typed the CH for column 1 and have set a tab stop for Side chair. Next, you center Item by forward spacing \_\_\_\_\_ into (1 for 1/1 for 2) the middle of the longest item in column 2 (which is \_\_\_\_\_) a total of \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). Then, to find the starting point for Item, you backspace \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). Type that CH. Then, return to LM and find the starting point for 603 first by forward spacing \_\_\_\_\_ time(s) and then by backspacing \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). At that point, \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Set a tab stop
- b. Reset the LM

1 for 2  
Side chair

5

2

4

1

b

6-16

In table typing, you work from left to right, doing first what comes first. In the first column of a table, if the CH is the longest item, you \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Type it, starting at LM
- b. Center it before typing

When the CH in column 1 is shorter than the items beneath it, you do \_\_\_\_\_ (above).

6-17

a

b

Now consider columns after the first one.

<u>State</u>	<u>Region</u>	<u>Capital City</u>
Maine	New England	Olympia
Washington	Far West	Augusta

You do first, what comes first. Therefore, you set a tab stop for New England \_\_\_\_\_ you type Region. You (before/after)

would set a tab stop for Olympia \_\_\_\_\_ you type (before/after)

Capital City.

before  
after

Study carefully the order of the steps in typing the table of the preceding frame.

- 1. Backspace 1 for 2 (from 42 or 51) for: Washington + New England + Capital City + IC space.
- 2. Set LM
- 3. From LM, forward space 1 for 2 into the middle of Washington; backspace 1 for 2 to center State. Type State.
- 4. Push back to LM and forward space 1 for 1 through Washington + IC space.
- 5. Set tab stop for New England.
- 6. Forward space 1 for 2 into the middle of New England. Backspace 1 for 2 to center and then type Region.

(continued in the next frame)

Continuing the steps in centering and typing the table of Frame 6-17:

- 7. Push carriage back to LM; tabulate to New England; forward space 1 for 1 through New England + IC space; type Capital City.
- 8. Push carriage back to the first C of Capital City and forward space 1 for 2 into its middle.
- 9. Backspace 1 for 2 to center Olympia; set tab stop.
- 10. Double space below the CH line; set regulator for desired spacing; type the remaining items, tabulating from the end of one column to the beginning of the next one.

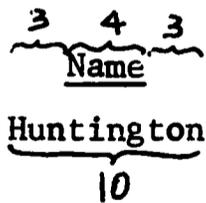
NOW YOU CHOOSE!

These steps seem \_\_\_\_.

- a. A pain in the neck.
- b. A lot of fun.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

Don't worry. See Frame 7-1 of this program and Section 8. Also, you'll next learn some shortcuts for typing column headings.



The centering processes described so far involve much fussy spacing. Often, simple inspection and counting are faster. Just a glance at the example at the left shows that

it consists of centering \_\_\_\_\_ letters over \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?) \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?)

letters. Obviously, the difference of \_\_\_\_ letters should be divided equally, with \_\_\_\_ blank space(s) on each side of the shorter item. With the carriage at the H of Huntington, just space \_\_\_\_\_ (forward/back) \_\_\_\_\_ time(s) and type \_\_\_\_\_ (how many?)

Name.

4  
10  
6  
3  
forward  
3

6-21

Model  
Clanchester

Spaces in Clanchester minus spaces in Model = \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ . Divide that difference in half, leaving \_\_\_\_ spaces on each side of Model! . That is, start to type Model over the \_\_\_\_\_ in Clanchester. If this were column 1 of (what letter?) \_\_\_\_\_ a table, just space in \_\_\_\_ times from LM to type Model. If this were a later column, space \_\_\_\_ times from the tab stop for \_\_\_\_\_ .

11 - 5 = 6  
3  
n (or 4th letter)  
3  
Clanchester

6-22

The same process applies to: Capital City  
Augusta  
Olympia

The spaces in Capital City minus the spaces in Augusta = \_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ . Since the difference is an odd number, in dividing it, put the "larger half" of it at the left of Augusta. Start Augusta (that is, set a tab stop for Augusta) under the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ in the CH. (what letter?) (what word?)

12 - 7 = 5  
i (or 4th letter) of  
Capital

6-23

The simple counting and subtraction described in the preceding three frames is much faster and simpler than fussy forward and backspacing--when the items to be counted are not too long. But in a wide column with a long CH, some typists find spacing methods faster--especially when the materials are in longhand. (About half the materials from which employed typists work is in longhand.)

Would you prefer to count or to forward-and-backspace for the following (check one): count \_\_\_\_; space \_\_\_\_.

Quotas of More Than \$100,000  
Northwest Bergen County  
Metropolitan New York

Wait until you have some experience with both methods before you choose.

Finally a little TEST. -----

6-24

<u>Department</u>	<u>Discount</u>	<u>Store</u>
Men's Clothing	10%	Downtown
Home Furnishings	15%	Midtown
Cosmetics	20%	Suburbanite

- To center Department, forward space \_\_\_\_\_ times into the middle of \_\_\_\_\_; then backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times.
- In column 2, the tab stop will be set at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(a/b)
  - D of Discount
  - 1 of 10%

- 8  
Home Furnishings  
5
- b

TEST continued (refer to 6-24). -----

6-25

- By counting (not spacing) in column 3, the heading will start over the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(what letter?) (what item?)
- Which comes first?
  - Typing Store
  - Setting a tab stop at the D of Downtown
- After typing Department, how do you locate the starting point for the D of Discount?

---



---



---

- 4th letter  
(or second u)  
Suburbanite
- b
- Push back to LM; forward space 1 for 1 through Home Furnishings + IC spaces  
(or equivalent wording)

Just read this frame; no answers are required. -----

6-26

The simple counting and subtraction described in frames 20 through 22 in this section are often faster than fussy forward and backspacing. For that reason, many typists use a mixture of backspacing and arithmetic in typing tables. They use spacing methods to locate the LM and the starting point for the longest item in each column. Then they switch to counting methods to center a heading over a column or a column under a heading. Practice the various methods and select the ones that seem best for you.

When you complete this section, you should know:

1. How to prepare a plan for tables without column headings that shows the starting point for each column.
2. How to check the correctness of your plan before you type.
3. How to type from the plan.

Section 7

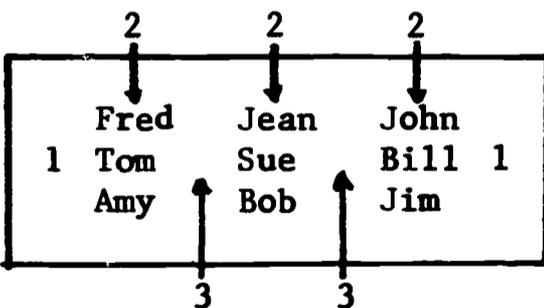
Tables without Column Headings  
(Arithmetic Method)

22 Frames

The backspace method of determining the horizontal layout of tables works nicely with simple tables--especially for persons who prefer to avoid arithmetic. If arithmetic is no problem, then arithmetic methods of planning tables are just as good. For difficult tables, arithmetic is better--because in such tables backspace methods are slow, with many possibilities for mistakes.

By backspace methods you can easily type \_\_\_\_\_ tables. Arithmetic methods apply to \_\_\_\_\_ tables.

simple  
all



Horizontally, the body of a table has three elements or parts. As numbered at the left, they are: (1) side margins (left and right), (2) typed matter, and (3) IC (intercolumn) space--the blank space between columns.

If the planning of a table is correct, then: side margins + typed matter + IC (intercolumn) space should equal total spaces across the page.

On 8½" x 11" paper or stationery, in pica type there are \_\_\_\_\_ spaces across the page; in elite type, \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

If some elite table uses 50 spaces for the typed matter + ICs, there will be \_\_\_\_\_ spaces left for the \_\_\_\_\_.

85  
 102  
 52 (102 - 50)  
 side margins  
 (or left and right margins)

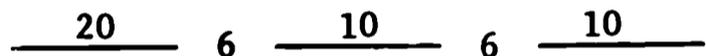
To plan a table means to locate the LM (left margin) and the starting point for each column. To do that, you must first determine the number of spaces needed for the typed matter. So: identify the longest item in each column, count its spaces, and add across the columns. Consider:

California	Sacramento	15,707,204
North Dakota	Bismarck	632,446
Ohio	Columbus	9,706,397

The longest item in column 1 is \_\_\_\_\_; it has \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. In column 2, the longest item has \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; and in column 3, \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. The total is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

North Dakota  
 12  
 10  
12  
 32

To plan tables by arithmetic, you use a horizontal line to represent each column, and you show the number of spaces in each column and between columns, like this:



The sketch shows that typed matter =  $20 + 10 + 10 = \underline{\quad}$   
 ICs (intercolumns) =  $2 \times 6 = \underline{\quad}$   
 Total =  $\underline{\quad}$

In elite type, the space remaining for side margins would be  $102 - \underline{\quad} = \underline{\quad}$ .

40  
12  
 52  
 (102 -) 52 = 50

The preceding frame shows that:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Total spaces available on the page} \\ - & \text{Spaces used for typed matter and ICs (intercolumns)} \\ \hline & = \text{Spaces available for side margins} \end{aligned}$$

Since there are two side margins, just divide the marginal space by \_\_\_\_\_ to determine the point on the carriage scale at which to set the \_\_\_\_\_ margin. Example: 40 spaces of typed matter + three 5-space ICs total \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. In pica type, the space remaining for the two side margins = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, and the LM would be set at \_\_\_\_\_.

2  
left  
55  
30 (85 - 55)  
15 (½ of 30)

If an odd number of spaces remains for margins, so that they cannot be identical, it is customary to put the extra space in the left margin. With 31 spaces for side margins, put 16 in the left margin and 15 in the right margin. With 41 spaces for side margins, set the LM (left margin) at \_\_\_\_; with 49 spaces for margins, set the LM at \_\_\_\_.

The "larger half" of 23 is 12. The "larger half" of 33 is \_\_\_\_.

If an odd number of spaces remains for the two side margins, put the larger half at the \_\_\_\_.

(left/right)

21  
25  
17  
left

A 2-column table has 1 IC (intercolumn). A 5-column table has 4 ICs. A 3-column table has \_\_\_\_ ICs. The number of ICs is always \_\_\_\_\_ the number of columns. Usually (but not always), all ICs in a particular table are the same width. With four 8-space ICs, you do not have to add 8 + 8 + 8 + 8. Just multiply \_\_\_\_ x \_\_\_\_ to get a total of \_\_\_\_ IC spaces.

2  
1 less than  
4 x 8 (or 8 x 4)  
32

Remember that:

Total spaces across the page - total table width (typed matter + ICs) = spaces available for side margins.

Assume columns of 8, 17, and 11 spaces, with IC = 7 spaces.

+	Typed matter = 8 + 17 + 11 =	(Fill in the
	Intercolumns = 2 x 7 =	three missing
	_____	numbers.)
=	Total table width =	

In pica type, spaces for side margins = 85 - \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_, and LM (left margin) would be set at \_\_\_\_.

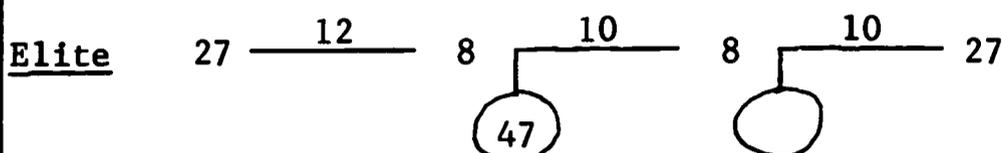
In elite type, side margin space = 102 - \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_, and LM would be set at \_\_\_\_.



85 (pica)  
99 (elite)  
elite  
26 (and) 26

7-12

So far, arithmetic has been used to determine the LM and to check its correctness before you type. You also use arithmetic (and your table sketch) to locate the starting point for each column (so that you can set \_\_\_\_\_).

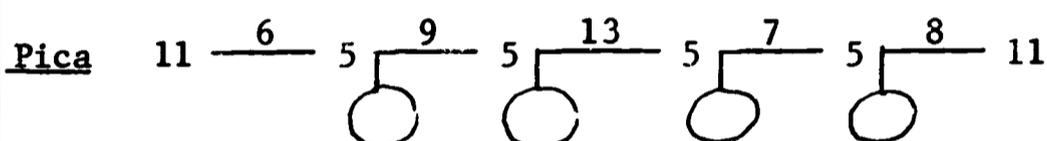


With LM at 27, column 2 begins at  $27 + 12 + 8$ , which, circled below column 2, equals \_\_\_\_\_. Column 3 begins at  $47 + 10 + 8$ , which equals \_\_\_\_\_. You would set two tab stops: the first at \_\_\_\_\_, another at \_\_\_\_\_.

tab stops  
47  
65  
47  
65

7-13

Here's a sketch\* for another table:

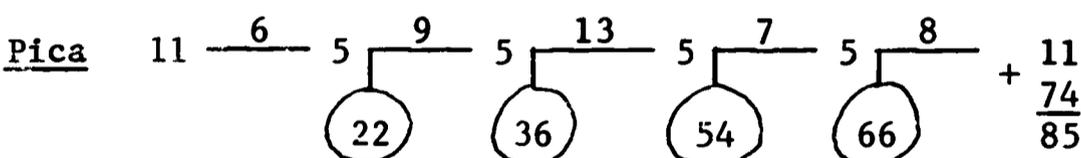


With circles for the points on the carriage scale at which each of the columns begins--and at which you would set \_\_\_\_\_--the numbers that you would write in the circles, in turn, are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

\*A sketch is also called a "table plan"--when it contains all the necessary numbers.

tab stops  
22  
(11 + 6 + 5)  
36  
(22 + 9 + 5)  
54  
(36 + 13 + 5)  
66  
(54 + 7 + 5)

7-14



Your first check (before inserting tab stop numbers) is to see that: margins + typed matter + ICs = \_\_\_\_\_ pica spaces. After tab stops are inserted in the plan, carry out a "right-end check"--last tab stop (66) + spaces in last column (8) = 74; and that total (74) + right margin (11) = \_\_\_\_\_. (Notice, at the right of the plan above, where the 74 is written.) If a "right-end check" turns out correctly, all your tab stops are probably \_\_\_\_\_ (correct/incorrect).



16   44   58   15

7-18

Check the side margins \_\_\_\_\_ you insert tab stop  
(before/after)  
numbers in the plan. After tab stop numbers are inserted,  
carry out a right-end check. If that check does not total  
\_\_\_\_\_ pica or \_\_\_\_\_ elite spaces, check all tab stops.

If the margins are wrong, can the tab stops be right? \_\_\_\_\_  
If the margins are correct, can the tab stops be wrong? \_\_\_\_\_

before  
85  
102  
no (see Frame 7-17)  
yes (see Frame 7-16)

7-19

When your table plan is complete and has checked out correctly, you are ready to type--almost. First you must:  
1. Clear previously set \_\_\_\_\_ and lock the right margin at extreme right--you don't need a RM in tables.  
2. Set regulator for the desired vertical spacing.  
Then--according to your table plan--set your \_\_\_\_\_ margin and a \_\_\_\_\_ for each column after the first one.  
Now, type across each \_\_\_\_\_ in turn, tabulating from the end of one \_\_\_\_\_ to the beginning of the next one.

tab stops  
left  
tab stop  
row  
column

7-20

Now a little TEST. -----

For the table below (either in pica or elite), fill in the plan numbers for: (1) column widths, (2) side margins, (3) tab stops. Then do a right-end check. (IC = 5)

Economics Club	Thursday	Room 319	Mr. Montgomery
Glee Club	Tuesday	Auditorium	Mrs. Farrell
Mathematics Club	Monday	Room 258	Mr. Conway
Sewing Circle	Wednesday	Room 407	Miss Goldman

\_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_





State  
Capital  
 below (or synonym)

8-3

<u>State</u>	<u>Capital</u>	
Arkansas	Little Rock	To center a short CH over a longer column, find the difference in length between the two; put half the difference on each side of the CH.
Connecticut	Hartford	

In column 1, above, the longest item is \_\_\_\_\_, containing \_\_\_\_ spaces. The CH uses \_\_\_\_ spaces. The difference is \_\_\_\_ spaces. Put half that difference, which is \_\_\_\_ spaces, on each side of the CH, like this:    3    5    3

A centered State starts \_\_\_\_ spaces after the starting point of \_\_\_\_.

State

Connecticut

||

Connecticut  
 11  
 5  
 6  
 3  
 3  
 Connecticut

8-4

The preceding frame (refer to it) shows that the CH for column 1 should begin \_\_\_\_ spaces to the right of LM. Because that number is the starting point for a CH, which is typed above the column, you record it on your plan \_\_\_\_\_ the horizontal line, like this

→ 32

29 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_ 28

(46)

In column 2, Capital has \_\_\_\_ strokes, and Little Rock has \_\_\_\_ strokes. With half the difference on each side of Capital, that CH will start \_\_\_\_ spaces after the beginning of column 2. That CH will start at \_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale.

3  
 above  
 7  
 11  
 2 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (11 - 7)]  
 48 (46 + 2)

8-5

Here's the full plan for the table of 8-3:

32                      48

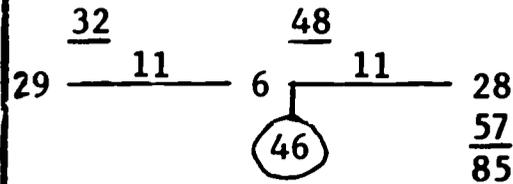
29    11                      6    11                      28

(46)

$\frac{57}{85}$

Notice that CH numbers are written \_\_\_\_\_ the line (above/below) and are \_\_\_\_\_ (circled/underscored). Tab stop numbers go \_\_\_\_\_ (above/below) the line and are \_\_\_\_\_ (circled/underscored). The 57, shown at the right of the plan above, is part of the right-end check and is the sum of \_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_.

above  
underscored  
below  
circled  
46 (+) 11



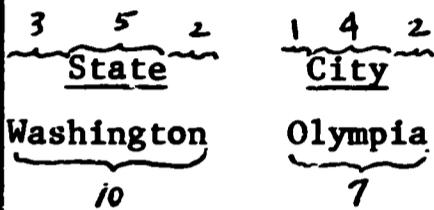
The plan tells you exactly what to do and in what order.  
First, make machine settings:  
LM at \_\_\_ and tab stop at \_\_\_.

You do not set tab stops for the CH points because you will not be returning to those points once the CHs are typed.

With LM and tab stop set, the plan tells you to type the CH of column 1 at \_\_\_ and the CH of column 2 at \_\_\_.

When you next type across the rows below the CHs, you get from column 1 to column 2 by \_\_\_\_\_.

29  
46  
32  
48  
tabulating  
(or equivalent)



The 5-space difference between Washington and State is divided, in the illustration, \_\_\_ spaces

to the left (of State) and \_\_\_ spaces to the right. The 3-space difference in the right-hand column above is divided \_\_\_ to the left and \_\_\_ to the right (of City).

It does not matter whether you put the "larger half" of an odd number at the left or at the right--so long as you always put it on the same side: always left or always right.

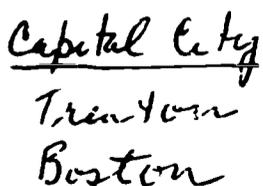
Do the two examples above agree with that rule? \_\_\_\_\_

3  
2  
1  
2  
no

In these instructional materials--just to permit checking against a single model answer--when an odd number of spaces must be divided, please put the "larger half" at the left.



In centering each of the CHs above, the number of blank spaces to the left would be: before State, \_\_\_; before City, \_\_\_; before Region, \_\_\_\_.

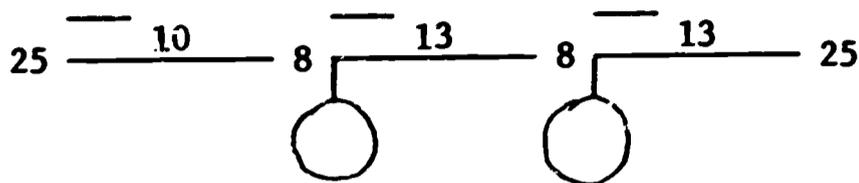


The same principle applies when the CH is longer than the column below. To the left of Trenton, there should be \_\_\_ blank spaces.

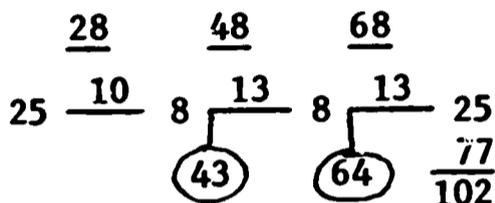
- 3 (larger half of 10 - 5)
- 5 (larger half of 13 - 4)
- 4 (larger half of 13 - 6)
- 3 (larger half of 12 - 7)

<u>State</u>	<u>City</u>	<u>Region</u>
California	San Francisco	Pacific Coast
Illinois	Chicago	Midwest

In the plan below, first fill in all the tab stop numbers (in the circles); then do a right-end check. Finally, fill in the CH numbers (in the short blanks).

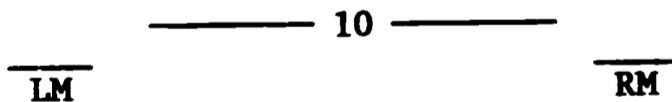


[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 8-17 or 8-21 or 8-24 or 8-31.]



<u>City</u>	<u>Continent</u>
Singapore	Asia
Cairo	Africa

In identifying the longest item in each column, the CH is part of the column. The longest item in column 2, above, is its CH, containing \_\_\_ spaces. The first step in table planning (before tab stops and CH numbers) is to determine the side margins. For the table above, fill in the missing numbers in the plan below (column widths and elite margins).



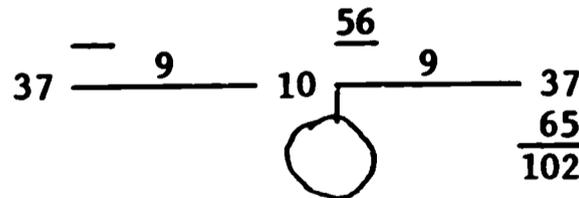
9



[9 + 10 + 9 = 28; and  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  of (102 - 28) =  
 $74/2 = 37$ ]

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign.  $74/2$  means  $74 \div 2$ .

<u>City</u>	<u>Continent</u>
Singapore	Asia
Cairo	Africa



After the side margins, you next locate the beginning of the longest item in each column, like this: LM (37) + column 1 (9) + IC (10) bring you to the beginning of column 2, at 56. BUT the longest item in column 2 is the CH; so 56 is written \_\_\_\_\_ the line. Next, the right-end check: (above/below)  
 $56 + \text{column 2 (9)} = \underline{\quad}$ , which, added to the RM of  $\underline{\quad}$ , totals  $\underline{\quad}$ .

above

65  
37  
 102

8-12

<u>City</u>	<u>Continent</u>	37	— 9	10	— 9	37
Singapore	Asia					
Cairo	Africa			○		<u>65</u> 102

Not yet shown in the plan are the CH number for column 1 and the tab stop for column 2. Since, as the plan above shows, Singapore begins at \_\_\_\_\_, a centered City would begin at \_\_\_\_\_. Since, as the plan shows, Continent begins at \_\_\_\_\_, for the items below to be centered beneath their CH, a tab stop should be set at \_\_\_\_\_. In the little blank above column 1, you would write \_\_\_\_\_; in the circle, \_\_\_\_\_.

37  
 40 [37 + ½ of (9 - 4)]  
 56  
 58 [56 + ½ of (9 - 6)]  
 40  
 58

8-13

<u>City</u>	<u>Continent</u>	37	— 9	10	— 9	37
Singapore	Asia					
Cairo	Africa			○ 58		<u>65</u> 102

The complete table plan above tells you to do the following things in the following order:  
 (1) Set LM at \_\_\_\_\_. (2) Set tab stop at \_\_\_\_\_. (3) Type City, starting at \_\_\_\_\_. (4) Type Continent, starting at \_\_\_\_\_. Next, double space below the CH line; set line space regulator for desired spacing; then type the items in the rows, moving from column 1 to column 2 by \_\_\_\_\_.

37  
 56  
 40  
 56  
 tabulating

8-14

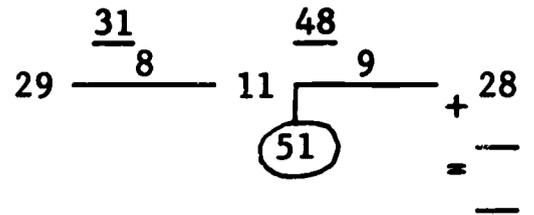
Carry out a right-end check as soon as you know the plan number for the longest item in the last column.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Stock No.</u>		<u>Stock No.</u>	<u>Item</u>
Stapler	214		214	Stapler
Desk pad	137		137	Desk pad

To carry out a right-end check: in the table at the left, start with the plan number for \_\_\_\_\_; in the (Stock No./214) table at the right, start with the plan number for \_\_\_\_\_ (Item/ (Desk pad))

Stock No.  
Stapler

<u>Item</u>	<u>Stock No.</u>
Stapler	214
Desk pad	137



8-15

The right-end check is:  $\frac{31}{8} + \frac{48}{9} = 11$ ; and  $28 + 51 = 79$ .

48 + 9 = 57  
(28 +) 57 = 85

8-16

Here are the steps in table planning:

1. Insert column widths and ICs. Subtract their total from 102 (or 85) and divide the difference between the two side margins.
2. Add across, starting at LM, and show the starting point for the longest item in each column--as a CH number if the CH is longer; otherwise, as a tab stop number.
3. Make a right-end check: starting point of last column + spaces in last column + RM. If the total is not 102 (or 85), go back to the beginning and find your mistake(s).
4. Finally, insert all other CH and tab stop numbers.

In the table plan of Frame 8-15 (refer to it) the last two numbers inserted were \_\_\_ and \_\_\_.

31 (and) 51  
(either order)

8-17

Now a little TEST. Follow the steps of 8-16.

Complete the plan for the table below, including side margins and a right-end check--using either pica or elite.

<u>President</u>	<u>Born</u>	<u>Native State</u>
T. Jefferson	1743	Virginia
A. Lincoln	1809	Kentucky
—	—	—
—	8	8

Diagram showing a table plan with dimensions and circled numbers 8 and 8. The diagram consists of a horizontal line with two vertical lines extending downwards from it. Below the horizontal line, the number 8 is written under each vertical line. Below the 8s, there are two circles, one under each 8. Below the circles, there are two horizontal lines, one above the other, representing a check.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through 8-21 or 8-24 or 8-31.]



the CH  
40 [36 + 1/2 of (17 - 9)]  
after

Pica  

$$\begin{array}{r} 28 \\ 31 \underline{7} \end{array} \quad 9 \begin{array}{r} 48 \\ \underline{13} \end{array} \quad 28$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 57 \\ 85 \end{array}$$
 (44)

Elite  

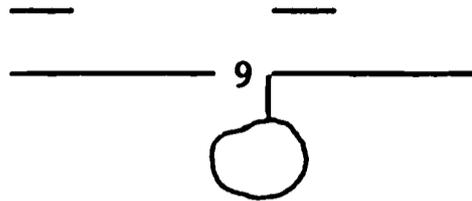
$$\begin{array}{r} 37 \\ 40 \underline{7} \end{array} \quad 9 \begin{array}{r} 57 \\ \underline{13} \end{array} \quad 36$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 66 \\ 102 \end{array}$$
 (53)

Now a little TEST.

8-21

<u>Chapter</u>	<u>Topic</u>	Complete the plan below for the table at the left--including a right-end check. Follow the steps of Frame 8-16 (refer to it) and take into account the frames on page 7. Choose either pica or elite type.
1	Punctuation	
2	Spelling	
3	Syllabication	



[Stop here; or continue through 8-24 or 8-31.]

Price | The principle of not setting a margin at a point at which only one item will be typed (Example: for the CH when it is the longest item in column 1) also applies to tab stops in columns after the first one. In the column of prices above, the \$ is typed \_\_\_\_\_ time(s). The tab stop should therefore be set at the \_\_\_\_\_ (\$/3/4) of \$34, and your table plan should show it at the scale number \_\_\_\_\_ spaces after the CH number for Price. If so, when (1/2) you first tabulate to that column to type \$34, you must remember to backspace \_\_\_\_\_ time(s) and type \_\_\_\_\_.

8-23

1  
3  
2  
1  
\$

<u>Regular Price</u>	<u>Sale Price</u>
\$8.40	\$7
6.20	5

If the CH of column 1, above, begins at 40 on the carriage scale, the tab stop for that column should be set at \_\_\_\_\_. If the CH of column 2 begins at 58, the LM for that column should be reset at \_\_\_\_\_.

45 [1 space after the \$; the \$ is at 40 + ½ of (13 - 5) = 40 + 4 = 44; and 44 + 1 = 45]

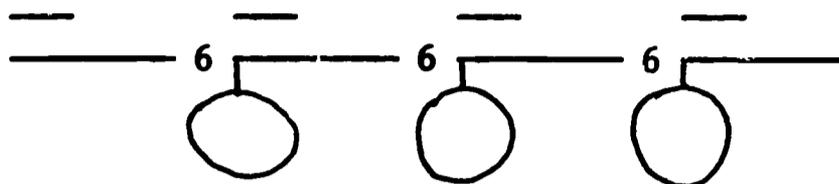
63 [1 space after the \$; the \$ is at 58 + ½ of (10 - 2) = 58 + 4 = 62; and 62 + 1 = 63]

Now a little TEST.

8-24

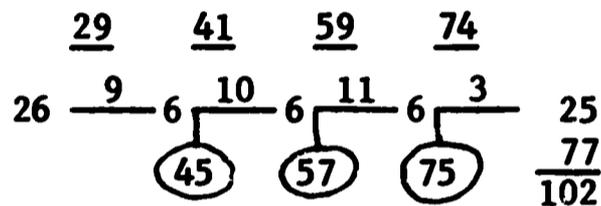
Complete the plan for the table below, including a right-end check, using either pica or elite type. Try to do so without referring to Frame 8-16.

<u>Club</u>	<u>Membership</u>	<u>Sponsor</u>	<u>Fee</u>
Economics	112	Mr. Hartman	\$ 6
Carpentry	43	Mr. Spence	15

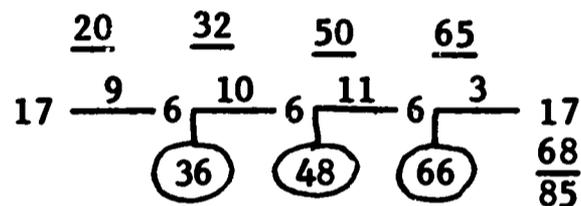


[Stop here; or continue through 8-31.]

Elite



Pica



over  
columns  
headings

Some typists prefer to use a mixture of arithmetic planning and backspace methods for typing tables with column headings.

8-25

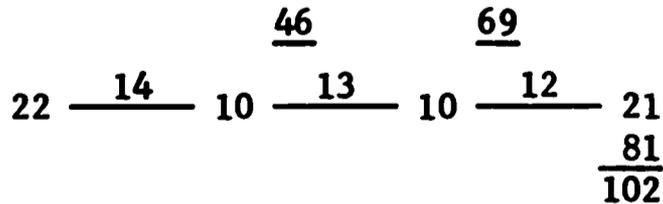
They make an arithmetic plan to locate the starting point for the longest item in each column. They they use backspace methods to center short headings \_\_\_\_\_ longer (under/over)

columns or short \_\_\_\_\_ under longer \_\_\_\_\_.

8-26

<u>Group</u>	<u>No. of Members</u>	<u>Headquarters</u>
Opera Guild	212,817	New York
Voters' League	14,645	Boston

A plan for "longest items only" shows:



Not yet shown on the plan are the starting point for the CH of column \_\_\_\_\_ and the tab stops for columns \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ because they will be located by the \_\_\_\_\_ method.

1  
2 (and) 3  
backspace

8-27

To center one item in relation to another (a CH in relation to its column or vice versa)--without counting or arithmetic--you must first find the midpoint of the longer item. From it, you then center the shorter item by backspacing 1 for 2 in the usual way.

To find the midpoint of an item: from its first letter, just FORWARD SPACE 1 2. To find the midpoint of No. of Members in the table of the preceding frame, just start at the N of that CH, which, according to the plan in Frame 8-26, is at \_\_\_\_ on the scale. Next, spelling by 2's, forward space \_\_\_\_ times. Then, center 212,817 by backspacing \_\_\_\_ times.

46  
7  
3

8-28

To center New York under Headquarters, you would start (according to the plan in Frame 8-26--refer to it) at \_\_\_\_ on the scale. Next, you would \_\_\_\_\_ space \_\_\_\_ times.  
(forward/back)

Finally, you would \_\_\_\_\_ space \_\_\_\_ times. At that point, you would \_\_\_\_\_.  
(forward/back) (a/b)  
a. Type the heading  
b. Set a tab stop

69  
forward  
6  
back  
4  
b

8-29

To center Group over Voters' League you would start (according to the plan in Frame 8-26--refer to it), at \_\_\_\_\_. Then you would \_\_\_\_\_ space \_\_\_\_ times, and next

\_\_\_\_\_ space \_\_\_\_ times. At that point, you would \_\_\_\_\_.  
(forward/back) (a/b)  
a. Type the heading  
b. Set a tab stop

22  
forward  
7  
back  
2  
a

<u>Stock No.</u>	<u>Item</u>
56	Typewriter
142	Adding machine

In pica type (with IC = 10), the S of Stock No. would start at 26 on the scale. To center the longest item below that CH, you would forward space \_\_\_ time(s), then backspace \_\_\_ time(s). At that point, you would                     .  
(a/b/c/d)

- a. Set a tab stop
- b. Reset the LM
- c. Type the CH
- d. Type 56

4  
1  
b

Now a little TEST. -----  
For the table below (in either pica or elite) show ONLY the numbers at which the longest item in each column begins, plus a right-end check. Assume machine settings at the \$, rather than 1 space to the right of it.

<u>Earnings</u>	<u>Federal Tax</u>	<u>FICA</u>	<u>Net</u>
\$550	\$103.03	\$26.40	\$420.57
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
	5	5	5
	○	○	○

To locate the \$ in column 2, start at \_\_\_ on the scale, forward space \_\_\_ times, then backspace \_\_\_ times.

Elite

<u>28</u>	<u>41</u>			
8	5	11	5	6
			5	7
			○	○
			57	68
				27
				75
				102

Pica

<u>19</u>	<u>32</u>			
8	5	11	5	6
			5	7
			○	○
			48	59
				19
				66
				85

41 (elite) or 32 (pica)

5  
3



9  
7  
2  
1  
4  
2

9-2

$\begin{array}{c} 12 \\ \hline \text{Average Gain} \\ \text{(in \%)} \\ \hline 3 \quad 6 \quad 3 \end{array}$	<p>To center one line in relation to another, just count the number of typewriter strokes in each line. Then put half the difference on each side of the shorter line. (See the illustration.)</p> <p>If a 6-stroke item is to be centered over a 10-stroke item, on each side of the shorter item there should be <u>    </u> blank spaces. With a 10-stroke and an 18-stroke item, there should be, on each side of the shorter item, <u>    </u> blank spaces.</p>
---	---

2 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (10 - 6)]  
4 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (18 - 10)]

9-3

<p>Words <u>in Body</u> 100</p>	<p>If you use arithmetic and prepare a table plan before you type, the plan should show the starting point for <u>each</u> CH line.</p> <p>If your plan shows that <u>in Body</u> (in the CH at the upper left) begins at 30 on the scale, it should also show that the <u>W</u> of <u>Words</u> begins at <u>    </u>, as shown below.</p> <p>The <u>7</u> in the plan is the number of strokes in the longest item in the column (<u>in Body</u>). The circled 32 is the point at which 100 starts-- the point at which you set a <u>                    </u>.</p>
---	--

31
30
7
32

31  
tab stop

9-4

<p>Words in <u>Body</u> 86</p>	<p>If a plan for a table that includes the column at the left shows that <u>Words in</u> begins at 30, it should also show that <u>Body</u> begins at <u>    </u>.</p> <p><u>Body</u> is typed below <u>Words in</u>; therefore, its starting point should be shown in your plan <u>                    </u> the 30. (below/above)</p> <p>Following the model of the plan in the lower right corner of the preceding frame (refer to it), fill in the CH numbers for the column at the upper left in this frame. Write the two CH numbers just above the little blank. <u>                    </u></p>
--	--

8
33

32

below

30

32

8

33

Annual  
Rainfall

Average  
Temperature

Elite  
Margins

If Rainfall begins at 36 on the scale, Annual should begin at \_\_\_\_\_. Over what letter in Temperature should the A of Average be typed? \_\_\_\_\_. The E of Elite should appear over the \_\_\_\_\_ of Margins.

37

m

a

$\overbrace{\hspace{6em}}^6$ <u>Area</u> (in Square Miles) $\underbrace{\hspace{15em}}_5$ 15,730,420 $\underbrace{\hspace{4em}}_4$	$\overbrace{\hspace{7em}}^7$ <u>Area</u> (in Square Miles) $\underbrace{\hspace{15em}}_4$ 15,730,420 $\underbrace{\hspace{3em}}_3$	$\overbrace{\hspace{6em}}^6$ <u>Area</u> (in Square Miles) $\underbrace{\hspace{15em}}_4$ 15,730,420 $\underbrace{\hspace{3em}}_3$
---	---	---

The longhand numbers in the CHs above show the number of blank spaces to the left and right of the typed item. Notice that when an odd number of strokes (13 and 7) is divided, the extra space may be put either at the left or at the right. It does not matter on which side you put it--so long as you always put it on the same side each time: al-  
ways at the left or always at the right.

Among the three CHs above, the one that does not obey the rule about extra space is No. \_\_\_\_\_.

3

(The extra space is at the right of Area but at the left of 15,730,420.)

Words in <u>Body</u> 98	The second of the two ways to center shorter CH lines is by forward and backspacing. You forward space "1 for 2" into the middle of the longer item; then you backspace 1 for 2 to find the starting point for the shorter item, like this:* (1) To find the middle of <u>Words in</u> , start at the <u>W</u> and tap the space bar once for each two strokes in <u>Words in</u> , using a total of _____ taps. (2) Then, to find the starting point for <u>Body</u> , backspace 1 for 2 a total of _____ times.
-------------------------------	---

\*To fill the blanks that follow, spell mentally by 2's as you count on your fingers.

4  
2

When you use spacing methods to center a shorter item in relation to a longer item, you start by \_\_\_\_\_ (forward/back) spacing 1 for 2 into the middle of the \_\_\_\_\_ (shorter/longer) item; then you \_\_\_\_\_ (forward/back) space 1 for 2 to find the starting point for the \_\_\_\_\_ (shorter/longer) item. Where the backspacing ends, start to type the \_\_\_\_\_ (shorter/longer) item.

forward  
longer  
  
back  
shorter  
  
shorter

Annual  
Rainfall

Average  
Temperature

Discount  
(in %)

Using forward and backspacing methods to center shorter CH lines, in column 1, above, you would first forward space into the middle of \_\_\_\_\_ a total of \_\_\_\_ times; then, to center \_\_\_\_\_, backspace \_\_\_\_ times. To center Average, first find the midpoint of \_\_\_\_\_ by forward spacing \_\_\_\_ times; then backspace \_\_\_\_ times. In the last column, forward space \_\_\_\_ times into the middle of \_\_\_\_\_; then backspace \_\_\_\_ times.

Rainfall  
4  
Annual  
3  
  
Temperature  
5  
3  
4  
Discount  
3

Now a little TEST.

Net  
Sales

Federal  
Tax

Population  
(in Thousands)

1. The N in Net should be typed over the \_\_\_\_\_ (what letter?) in Sales.
2. On each side of Tax there should be \_\_\_\_ blank spaces.
3. To center Population by spacing methods, you would forward space \_\_\_\_ times, then backspace \_\_\_\_ times.

[End of subsection on 2- and 3-line column headings]

- 1. a
- 2. 2
- 3. 7
- 5

9-11

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Registration</u>	
	<u>Boys</u>	<u>Girls</u>
Typing	180	307
Shorthand	30	115

A heading that embraces or spans or covers several other CHs is called a "braced heading" or "spanner heading." Above, the braced head is \_\_\_\_\_ . Boys and Girls fit nicely below (with a few blank spaces between them), and they are blocked at the left and right of the \_\_\_\_\_ heading.

Registration  
braced (or spanner)

9-12

*Letter Length*      *Side Margins*  
*Left*      *Right*

Side Margins is called a \_\_\_\_\_ head(ing). If Left and Right are blocked under Side Margins, Left will start under the S of Side Margins. For Right to end under the final s of Side Margins, it must begin under the \_\_\_\_\_ of Side Margins. (what letter?)

In the table above, would you have to plan in advance how many spaces to leave between Left and Right? \_\_\_\_\_

braced (or spanner)  
r  
no

9-13

<p><u>Test Scores</u> <u>Men</u>      <u>Women</u></p>	<p><u>Test Scores</u>         nemow ←</p>	<p>The strange-looking illustration just to the left shows the easiest way to determine the starting point</p>
--	---	--

for a CH that is to be blocked at the right of a \_\_\_\_\_ heading. Here's how to do it:

Position the carriage in the space after the final s of Test Scores and backspace through it--letter by letter--as you spell the CH that is to be blocked below it. If you do that, when you finish spelling Women, you will be at the \_\_\_\_\_ of Test Scores. If Men were to be blocked (what letter?)

at the right, you would spell backwards to the \_\_\_\_\_ of Test Scores.

braced (or spanner)  
c  
r

①	②	③	④	9-14
<u>Registration</u>	<u>Registration</u>	<u>Registration</u>	<u>Registration</u>	
<u>Boys</u> <u>Girls</u>	<u>Boys</u> <u>Girls</u>	<u>Boys</u> <u>Girls</u>	<u>Boys</u> <u>Girls</u>	

With a 1-line braced head and 1-line CHs blocked beneath the braced head, a separation between the braced head and its CHs is permissible, but not required. Separation is by underscoring or by a blank line or by both.

No separation is used in illustration no. \_\_\_\_\_. Only a blank line is used in no. \_\_\_\_\_. Only underscoring is used in no. \_\_\_\_\_. Both underscoring and a blank line are used in no. \_\_\_\_\_. Are all four illustrations correct? \_\_\_\_\_ Which one do you like best? No. \_\_\_\_\_.

2  
3  
1  
4  
yes

It's up to you!  
(But don't you think No. 1 is rather crowded looking?)

Examination Grades		9-15
<u>Name</u> <u>Grade</u>		
Collins            B		
Franklin           A		
Grant              C		

Notice at the left that the longest item (sometimes the CH, sometimes not) is blocked under the \_\_\_\_\_ head(ing). In the left-hand column \_\_\_\_\_ is blocked. At the (Name/Franklin) right, \_\_\_\_\_ is blocked. Because both CHs (Name and Grade) \_\_\_\_\_ blocked, a blank line between the (are/are not) braced head and its CHs \_\_\_\_\_ necessary. (is/is not)

braced  
Franklin  
Grade  
are not  
is

Examination Grades			9-16
<u>Name</u> <u>Grade</u>		<u>Registration</u>	
Franklin            A		<u>Boys</u> <u>Girls</u>	
		93        112	

The illustrations show that a blank line between the braced head and its CHs must be used when the CHs \_\_\_\_\_ (are/are not) blocked; that is, when the CHs \_\_\_\_\_ the longest (are/are not) items in their columns. In the illustration at the right, underscoring or a blank line (or both) between the braced head and its CHs would be \_\_\_\_\_ (wrong/permissible).

are not  
are not  
permissible

9-17

①		②		③	
<u>Spring Term</u> <u>Registration</u>		<u>Letter Placement</u> <u>Pica Elite</u>		<u>Average Test</u> <u>Score</u>	
<u>Boys</u>	<u>Girls</u>	<u>Margins</u>	<u>Margins</u>	<u>Boys</u>	<u>Girls</u>

So far, we have considered 1-line braced heads with 1-line CHs. When the number of lines in the braced head differs from the number of lines in the CHs below, you MUST use as a separator either a blank line only, as in No. \_\_\_\_ above; or underscoring only, as in No. \_\_\_\_; or both, as in No. \_\_\_\_ above.

3  
2  
1

9-18

<u>Price</u>		<u>Price</u>	
<u>Regular</u>	<u>Sale</u>	<u>Regular</u>	<u>Sale</u>
\$8	\$7	\$6	\$7

Up to now, we have considered columns that fit within the width of the braced head.

When the braced head is SHORTER than the columns it spans as in the two illustrations above, underscoring as a separator is \_\_\_\_\_ and a blank line is \_\_\_\_\_ (permissible/required).

\_\_\_\_\_. The underscoring runs across the (permissible/required) width of the \_\_\_\_\_ (braced head/columns).

required  
permissible  
columns

9-19

①		②	
<u>Pacific Coast</u>		<u>Pacific Coast</u>	
<u>State</u>	<u>Capital</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Capital</u>
California	Sacramento	California	Sacramento

When a braced head is shorter than the columns it spans, the underscoring that separates it from its columns should run from the left edge of the left-hand column to the right edge of the right-hand column. Of the two illustrations above, the correct one is No. \_\_\_\_\_. Notice also that with a shorter braced head, if the CHs below are not the longest items in their columns, the braced head is separated by \_\_\_\_\_ (only underscoring/only a blank line/both).

2  
both

9-20

Note. Use in the blanks either P (Permissible) or R (Required).

1. When the braced head is at least as wide as blocked CHs below:
  - a. If both use 1 line, underscoring or a blank line or both, as a separator, is \_\_\_\_.
  - b. If the number of lines in the braced head differs from the number of the CHs below, underscoring or a blank line or both is \_\_\_\_.
2. If a braced head is wide enough for the columns beneath it--but if the longest item in some column is wider than its CH--to separate the braced head from its CHs, underscoring is \_\_\_\_ and a blank line is \_\_\_\_.

- 1a. P (See 9-14)
- 1b. R (See 9-17)
2. P  
R (See 9-15)

9-21

Note. Use in the blanks P (Permissible) or R (Required).

3. When the braced head is shorter than the columns below:
  - a. If the CHs are the longest items in their columns, underscoring is \_\_\_\_ and a blank line is \_\_\_\_.
  - b. If the CHs are not the longest items in the columns, underscoring is \_\_\_\_ and a blank line is \_\_\_\_.
4. Whether or not columns (or CHs) can be blocked under a braced head, to separate the braced head from its CHs the use of both underscoring and a blank line is always \_\_\_\_.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point; or you may wish to continue through the end of this subsection, Frame 9-34.]

- 3a. R  
P (See 9-18)
- 3b. R  
R (See 9-19)
4. P (See 9-14 through 9-19)

9-22

<u>Freshman Team</u>	
<u>Starters</u>	<u>Alternates</u>
Bellini	Green
Conklin	Heinrich
Henderson	Rosario
.....	.....
9	4
10	

Notice at the left that when a braced heading is narrower than the columns it spans, it is centered over them. Notice also the spacing and underscoring after the braced head. Here's how to center the braced head:

Column 1 uses \_\_\_\_ spaces; column 2 uses \_\_\_\_ spaces; and between columns there are \_\_\_\_ spaces--for a total of \_\_\_\_ spaces. Freshman Team uses \_\_\_\_ spaces. Now divide in half the difference between total spaces and the spaces in Freshman Team. The result is to leave at the left of the braced head \_\_\_\_ blank spaces.

9  
10  
4  
23  
13

5 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (23 - 13) = 10/2 = 5]

Note. The diagonal or fraction bar (/) is also a division sign. 10/2 means 10 ÷ 2.

9-23

<u>At Home Games</u>	
<u>Opponent</u>	<u>Date</u>
Princeton	November 8
Yale	December 6
Harvard	.....December 13
	5

At the left is part of a football schedule, showing 5 spaces between columns.

To center At Home Games over the pair of columns, note that

Princeton + intercolumn space + December 13 = \_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_, for a total of \_\_\_\_ spaces. The braced head has \_\_\_\_ spaces. If you divide the difference by 2, you will see that at the left of the braced head there should be \_\_\_\_ blank spaces. Therefore, start At Home Games lined up over the \_\_\_\_\_ of Princeton.  
(what letter?)

9  
5  
11  
25  
13

6 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (25 - 13) = 12/2 = 6]

t (the 7th letter)

9-24

<u>Away from Home Games</u>	
<u>Opponent</u>	<u>Date</u>
Brown	November 15
Columbia	November 22
Pennsylvania.....	November 27
	5

Across the two columns at the left, including IC (intercolumn) space, there is a total of \_\_\_\_ spaces. The braced head contains \_\_\_\_ spaces.

If you divide the difference of \_\_\_\_ spaces in half, you will find that, to the left of the braced head, there should be \_\_\_\_ spaces. The braced head should start lined up over the \_\_\_\_ of Pennsylvania. From the LM (or tab stop) at the beginning of the left-hand column, to find the starting point for Away, space forward \_\_\_\_ times.

28  
20  
8  
4  
s (the fifth letter)  
4

9-25

FOOTBALL SCHEDULE

<u>At Home</u>		<u>Away from Home</u>	
<u>Opponent</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Opponent</u>	<u>Date</u>
Princeton	November 8	Brown	November 15
Yale	December 6	Columbia	November 22
Harvard	...December 13.....	Pennsylvania...	November 27
	3		3

If properly centered, the A in At Home should be lined up over \_\_\_\_\_ in Princeton. The A in Away from Home should be lined up over the \_\_\_\_\_ in Pennsylvania.  
(what letter?)

final n

(23 spaces in Princeton + IC + December 13 minus 7 spaces in At Home = 16 and 16/2 = 8. For 8 blank spaces at left of At Home start over the 9th letter of Princeton--n.)

<sup>1</sup>(26 spaces in Pennsylvania + IC + November 27 minus 14 spaces in Away from Home = 12, and 12/2 = 6. For 6 blank spaces at left of Away from Home, start over the 7th letter of Pennsylvania--1.)

(forward) 11

(back) 3

longest

In the preceding four frames the braced head was centered by counting spaces. It can also be centered by forward and backspacing.

To center At Home over the first pair of columns in the preceding frame (refer to it), forward space 1 for 2 through Princeton + December 13 + the 3-space IC (intercolumn); then backspace 1 for 2 through At Home. Count on your fingers and spell by 2's mentally to determine that, to center At Home, you would forward space \_\_\_\_ times; then backspace \_\_\_\_ times.

The fastest way to type tables like that of Frame 9-25 (refer to it) requires you to space up and down between one line and another, like this:

1. Center the title; then space down to the Princeton line.
  2. From LM (Elite 24, Pica 15), type Princeton + 3 IC spaces; then set tab stop.
  3. Turn down to December 13 line and type it + 6 IC spaces; set tab stop.
  4. Type Pennsylvania (same line as December 13) + 3 IC spaces.
  5. Set tab stop and type November 27 (same line).
- Notice that you set tab stops as you go along and that the first thing typed in each column is the \_\_\_\_\_ item. (first/longest)

6. For the various headings (braced and CHs), turn to the proper line for each. Then, either by forward and backspacing or by counting and arithmetic, CENTER--
  - a. Each CH over its column
  - b. Each braced head over its pair of columns
7. To underscore the first braced head, line up over the 3 of December 13 and strike an underscore; then push back to LM and underscore up to the last one. Use the same process to underscore the second braced head. Start by lining up over the \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ (what word?)
8. With all headings typed and tab stops set, turn to row 1 and type. Remember to tabulate past items already typed.



Discount Rate  
 first  
 second e (of) Reserve  
Federal Reserve  
Discount Rate  
1968                      1969

9-32

Now a little TEST.

<u>Price</u>		<u>Discount</u>	
<u>Regular</u>	<u>Sale</u>	\$	%
\$140	\$126	\$14	10
4			

1. If you center Price by spacing methods, you would forward space \_\_\_\_ times; then backspace \_\_\_\_ times.
2. If you center Price by counting methods, the P in Price should be lined up over the \_\_\_\_ in Regular.
3. If you block the pair of columns under Discount, between the 4 of \$14 and the 1 of 10, there will be \_\_\_\_ blank spaces.

[Test continued in the next frame.]

1. (forward) 7  
(back) 2
2. a  
[ $\frac{1}{2}$  of 15 - 5) = 10/2 = 5;  
and a is the 6th  
stroke in Regular.]
3. 3  
Discount  
\$      %  
\$14...10

9-33

TEST continued.

<u>School System</u> <u>Rural</u> <u>City</u>	<u>Annual Salaries of</u> <u>Administrative Staff</u> <u>Principals Chairmen</u>
--	--

4. The braced head must be underscored in the heading at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(left/right)
5. A blank line to separate the braced head from the CHs below is more desirable in the heading at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(left/right)

[Test continued in the next frame.]

4. right
5. right

9-34

TEST continued.

<u>Team Members</u> <u>Varsity</u> <u>Second Team</u> Fenton                      Thompson Brown                      Diaz Dellapico                      Flagman	Assume 4 IC spaces between columns. 6. <u>Varsity</u> should start lined up over the _____ in <u>Dellapico</u> . (what letter?) 7. <u>Second</u> should start lined up over the _____ in _____. (what word?) 8. <u>Team Members</u> should start lined up over the _____ in <u>Dellapico</u> . 9. Must there be a blank line after <u>Team Members</u> ? _____
---	--

[End of subsection on braced headings]



6  
 3 (½ of 6)  
 6 (twice as much as the IC space between the braced columns)

Gross Typing Speed in WPM

<u>Name</u>	<u>Test 1</u> ..... <u>Test 2</u> ..... <u>Gain</u>
-------------	---

The braced head above is 25 strokes wide. The CHs below total 16 strokes. Can the difference of \_\_\_\_ strokes be divided equally? \_\_\_\_ As shown by the dots: between Test 1 and Test 2 there are \_\_\_\_ spaces. Between Test 2 and Gain there are \_\_\_\_ spaces. Does the width of ICs sometimes have to differ by 1 space? \_\_\_\_

9  
 no  
 4  
 5  
 yes

BIRTH DATES OF OUR PRESIDENTS

Washington	1732	Hayes	1822
John Adams	1735	Garfield	1831
Jefferson	1743	Arthur	1830

Tables with braced headings are not the only ones that sometimes require unequal IC spacing. As illustrated above, unequal spacing should be used whenever the information groups itself naturally into separate sets of columns. In fact, the table above does not even need ordinary column headings because the information in the columns is made clear from the \_\_\_\_\_ of the table.

title (or heading)

	<u>Temperature</u> (in Degrees)		<u>Humidity</u> (in %)	
<u>Season</u>	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
Spring	66	50	70	60
Summer.....	84	71.....	85	76
	12	5	8	5

Below the first braced head, the High and Low columns are separated by \_\_\_\_ spaces. To make the second braced head exactly as wide as the first one, its columns are also separated by \_\_\_\_ spaces. Between the two braced heads is \_\_\_\_\_ space; and, after the unbraced column (Sea-son), \_\_\_\_\_ space.  
 (the same/more) (the same/still more)

5  
5  
more  
still more

The more complicated of the tables shown in Frames 11 through 40 require planning by arithmetic methods. The simpler ones could be done by backspacing.

To find the left margin by arithmetic: once you have decided on IC space, just subtract typed matter + IC space from the total across the page and divide the difference by 2.

Example: In the table of 9-40 (refer to it), its width consists of: Season + 12 IC spaces + (in Degrees) + 8 IC spaces + High + 5 IC spaces + Low, for a total of \_\_\_\_\_. On ordinary stationery, the LM (left margin) on your typewriter would be set at \_\_\_\_\_.

50  
26 (elite)  
[½ of (102 - 50)]  
18 (pica)  
[½ of (85 - 50)]

In finding the LM of the table in Frame 9-25 by arithmetic methods (refer to it), the typed matter totals \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, and the ICs total \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, for a grand total of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. On your typewriter the LM would be set at \_\_\_\_\_.

43  
12  
55  
24 (elite)  
[½ of (102 - 55)]  
15 (pica)  
[½ of (85 - 55)]

Backspace methods could be used for the table of Frame 9-39 (refer to it). Assume 3 IC spaces between columns within a set, and 6 IC spaces between the two sets of columns, for a total of \_\_\_\_\_ IC spaces. Just backspace (1 for 2) for: Washington + 1732 + Garfield + 1831. Then, for the total of \_\_\_\_\_ IC spaces, backspace \_\_\_\_\_ more times. Count on your fingers and spell (by 2's) mentally to determine that there will be a total of \_\_\_\_\_ backspaces--so that the LM on your typewriter would be set at \_\_\_\_\_. With 6 spaces after column 1 (in Frame 9-37, refer to it), the table would require \_\_\_\_\_ backspaces; LM would be set at \_\_\_\_\_.

12  
 12  
 6  
 19  
 (elite) 32 (51 - 19)  
 (pica) 23 (42 - 19)  
 20  
 (elite) 31 (51 - 20)  
 (pica) 22 (42 - 20)

1. 3 [Assignment - (Row + Seat) = 10 - (3 + 4) = 10 - 7 = 3]
2. Average (longest item in last column)
3. 19 [Sophomore + 3 + Average = 9 + 3 + 7 = 19]

4. 54 (12 + 8 + 10 + 5 + 19)
  5. Elite 24 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (102 - 54) = 48/2 = 24]
  6. 11
  7. (Half) 12 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 11) + 1]  
 (Full) 28 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (66 - 11) + 1]
- Pica 16 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (85 - 54) = 31/2 = 16]

### STUDENT INFORMATION

<u>Name</u>	<u>Seating Assignment</u>		<u>School Record</u>	
	<u>Row</u>	<u>Seat</u>	<u>Class</u>	<u>Average</u>
Kent, John	3	4	Junior	78
Macedo, Fred	2	6	Sophomore	82

1. If Row and Seat are blocked under Assignment, those two columns will be separated by \_\_\_\_ spaces.
2. Therefore, the same number of blank spaces should be left between Sophomore and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If so, the two School Record columns will stretch across \_\_\_\_ spaces.

4. In the table of the preceding frame, assume 5 spaces between the two pairs of braced columns and 8 spaces after the unbraced column. Using, also, the model answers to the preceding frame, the entire table is \_\_\_\_ spaces wide.
5. On your typewriter, the LM for that table would be set at \_\_\_\_.
6. If you triple space after the table title, double space the rows of the table, and leave 1 blank line after the braced heads, the table is \_\_\_\_ lines long.
7. If centered on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -sheet, it would start on line \_\_\_\_; on a full sheet, it would start on line \_\_\_\_.

The fastest way to type the table of Frame 9-44 (refer to it) requires you to space up and down between one line and another, like this:

1. Center the title; then space down to the CH line (Name, Row, etc.)
2. From LM (Elite 24, Pica 16), tap the space bar once for each stroke in the longest item in column 1.
3. Space 8 times.
4. Type and underscore Row.
5. Space 3 times; type and underscore Seat.
6. Space 5 times; set tab stop.
7. Space (don't type) 1-for-1 through Sophomore + 3 IC spaces. Then type and underscore Average.
8. Type and underscore Assignment, lined up over Row.

(Typing steps for the table of Frame 9-44 continued.)

- 9. Either by forward and back spacing or by counting and arithmetic, CENTER--
  - a. Name over Macedo, Fred
  - b. Class over Sophomore
  - c. Seating over Assignment
  - d. School Record over its two columns
- 10. Be sure to underscore the second braced head from the S of Sophomore to the final e of Average.
- 11. Finally, set tab stops for columns 2, 3, and 5--
  - a. At the o of Row
  - b. At the e or a of Seat
  - c. At the first e or r of Average
- 12. Turn down to row 1, set for double spacing, and type the rows of the table.

Now a little TEST.

<u>Freshman</u> <u>Grades</u>	<u>History</u>		<u>Earth</u> <u>Science</u>		<u>Both</u>	
	<u>No.</u>	<u>%</u>	<u>No.</u>	<u>%</u>	<u>No.</u>	<u>%</u>
A	4	10	3	5	7	7
B	8	20	15	25	23	23
C	16	40	27	45	43	43
D	8	20	12	20	20	20
F	4	10	3	5	7	7

- 1. If the No. and % columns are blocked under History, between those 2 columns there will be \_\_\_\_ blank spaces.

[Test continued in the next frame]

TEST continued (based on the table of 9-48).

2

History

<u>No.</u>	<u>%</u>
3	6
10	..20

- 2. If you leave twice as much space between the sets of braced columns, they will be separated by \_\_\_\_ spaces.
- 3. If column 1 is followed by twice as many blank spaces as are left between the sets of braced columns, total IC space (excluding spaces between No. and %) = \_\_\_\_.
- 4. The width of the entire table is \_\_\_\_ spaces, and LM on your typewriter would be set at \_\_\_\_.
- 5. The underscore below the last braced head is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide. (how many?)

[Test continued in the next frame]

- 2. 4 (2 x 2)
- 3. 16 [8 after column 1  
(2 x 4) + 4 + 4]
- 4. 45 [16 IC spaces +  
8 + 7 + 7 + 7]  
29 (elite)  
[½ of (102 - 45)]  
20 (pica)  
[½ of (85 - 45)]
- 5. 7 [from the N of No.  
to the right edge  
of the % column]

TEST continued (based on the table of 9-48). . . . . 9-50

Assume: (a) a 1-line table title--Distribution of Freshman Grades in Two Subjects, (b) a blank line after the braced heads, and (c) a double-spaced body.

- 6. If the title (followed by triple spacing) is line 1, Earth is on line \_\_\_\_; History is on line \_\_\_\_; Freshman, one line \_\_\_\_; Grades, on line \_\_\_\_; No. and % are on line \_\_\_\_.
- 7. With a double-spaced body, the entire table is \_\_\_\_ lines long. If centered on a ½-sheet, it would start on line \_\_\_\_; on a full sheet, on line \_\_\_\_.

[End of subsection on unequal intercolumn spacing]

- 6. 4  
5  
6  
7  
7
- 7. 17  
9 [½ of (33 - 17), + 1]  
25 [½ of (66 - 17), + 1]

9-51

STATES AND THEIR CAPITALS	← tab
Alabama	Montgomery
Alaska	Juneau

Whenever possible, CHs should be blocked under a braced head. In the same way, as shown at the left, columns should be

blocked under the \_\_\_\_\_ of a table--whenever they will fit and still leave a reasonable number of IC spaces.

To find the starting point for the last column--so that you can set a \_\_\_\_\_--position the carriage in the space after the table title and backspace 1 for 1 as you spell the longest item in the column. Or, as shown by the longhand above the title, start at the final S and point backwards with your pencil point as you spell Montgomery. Either way, you will find that a tab stop should be set at \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(what letter?) (what word?)

title (or heading)  
tab stop  
R (of) THEIR

9-52

EUROPEAN CAPITAL CITIES	
<u>Country</u>	<u>Capital</u>
Sweden	Stockholm
Norway	Oslo

Of course you know that the longest item in a column is blocked. In the example at the left, the word that should end under the last letter of the

table title is \_\_\_\_\_. The word that starts under the E of European is \_\_\_\_\_. A centered Capital will start over the \_\_\_\_\_ of Stockholm.  
(Capital/Stockholm)  
(Country/Sweden)  
(what letter?)

Stockholm  
Country  
t

9-53

PRESIDENTIAL BIRTH YEARS AND STATES

Washington	1732	Virginia
John Adams	1735	Massachusetts
10	4	13

The title at the left uses 35 strokes. As shown by the underscored stroke count below the table, the typed mat-

ter uses  $10 + 4 + 13 =$  \_\_\_ strokes. Remaining for ICs are  $35 -$  \_\_\_  $=$  \_\_\_ strokes. Equal division of these remaining strokes puts, between columns, \_\_\_ strokes. After typing Washington, space \_\_\_ times and set a tab stop for column \_\_\_; after typing 1732, space \_\_\_ times and set a tab stop for column \_\_\_.

27  
(35 -) 27 = 8  
4 (8 ÷ 2)  
4  
2  
4  
3

9-54

To block columns under a table title, you have to count and use arithmetic to determine (a) whether all columns will fit under the title and (b) how much space to leave between columns, like this:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Typewriter strokes in the table title} \\ - & \text{Typewriter strokes in the columns} \\ \hline & = \text{Spaces available for intercolumns} \end{aligned}$$

Assume a 3-column table with a 40-stroke title and column widths of 8, 12, and 10 spaces. Unused space for ICs = \_\_\_\_\_. If divided equally between two intercolumns, each IC would equal \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

10 [40 - (8 + 12 + 10) =  
40 - 30 = 10 ]  
5 [10 ÷ 2]

9-55

DISTRIBUTION OF FRESHMAN GRADES IN TWO SUBJECTS

Grade	History		Earth Science		Both	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
Pass	36	90	57	95	93	93
Fail	4	10	3	5	7	7
	11		5		5	

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Strokes in table title} = 47 \\ - & \text{Typed matter (5 + 7 + 7 + 7)} = \text{ } \\ \hline & = \text{Intercolumn spaces} = \text{ } \end{aligned}$$

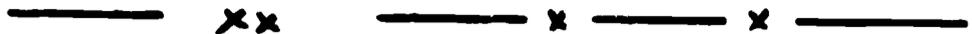
(Fill in the two blanks.)

To leave about twice as much IC space after the unbraced column as between the braced columns, put, between the braced heads, \_\_\_ spaces and, after column 1, \_\_\_ spaces.

26  
21 (47 - 26)  
5  
11 (as close as possible to twice as much as 5)

9-56

The sketch for the table of Frame 9-55, below, shows how to divide the 21 IC spaces among the columns.



With x standing for an unknown number of spaces between columns, we want x spaces between columns 2 and 3 and between columns 3 and 4. Between columns 1 and 2, we want twice as much space--two x's worth. All together, there are 4 x's that have to be divided into 21 IC spaces.

$21 \div 4$  (to the nearest whole number) = 5. That is,  $x = 5$  and  $xx = 10$ . But  $10 + 5 + 5 = 20$ ; so change the 10 to 11. Check:  $11 + 5 + 5 = 21$ .

If there had been a total of 17 IC spaces, after column 1 you would leave \_\_\_\_\_ blank spaces.

9  
[ $17 \div 4 = 4$ ; so  $x = 4$  and  $xx = 8$ . But  $8 + 4 + 4 = 16$ . So, add the extra space to the 8, making it 9.]

9-57

In tables like that of 9-55, first count strokes in the typed matter; then do the arithmetic of determining IC space. When you are ready to type, it is easiest to type the longest item in each column first; then turn the roller up or down a line to type shorter items, like this:

In 9-55 (refer to it): (1) Turn down to the Grade line and type it. (2) Space \_\_\_\_\_ times, turn up \_\_\_\_\_ line(s), and type \_\_\_\_\_. (3) Space \_\_\_\_\_ times and type \_\_\_\_\_. (4) Space \_\_\_\_\_ times to the last column and type \_\_\_\_\_ underscores. (5) Then fill in the missing items (Both, Earth, No., %). (6) Finally, set tab stops at the beginning of each No. column and each \_\_\_\_\_ column.

11  
1  
History  
5  
Science  
5  
7  
%

9-58

Table Title	
x	
x	
Earth	
Science	
x	
No.	%
x	
57	95
x	
3	5

For vertical centering, the table of Frame 9-55 (refer to it) might be sketched as shown at the left, in which a little x stands for a blank line. As shown, after the table title you \_\_\_\_\_ space. The 2-line (double/triple) braced head is typed in \_\_\_\_\_ space (single/double)

ing. Thereafter, you \_\_\_\_\_ space. As sketched, the table is \_\_\_\_\_ lines long. If centered on a half sheet, the table would start on line \_\_\_\_\_; on a full sheet, on line \_\_\_\_\_.

triple

single

double

11

12

$$[\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } (33 - 11), + 1 =$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } 22, + 1 = 11 + 1 = 12]$$

28

$$[\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } (66 - 11), + 1 =$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } 55, + 1 = 27 + 1 = 28]$$

11 (same width as Temperature)

$$4 [11 - (\text{High} + \text{Low}) = 11 - (4 + 3)$$

$$= 11 - 7 = 4]$$

$$2. \quad 6$$

$$11$$

$$\frac{11}{28}$$

a. 20 (48 - 28)

b. 7 (x + xx = 3x; if 3x = 20,

$$x = 7)$$

13 (20 - 7)

c. final e of Temperature  
 (the 20th space in the  
 title--with 6 + 13 = 19  
 blank spaces to the  
 left of it)

Now a little TEST (columns blocked under title).

Seasonal Temperature and Humidity Highs and Lows

<u>Season</u>	<u>Temperature</u>		<u>Humidity</u>	
	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
<u>Spring</u>	66	50	70	60
<u>Summer</u>	84	71	85	76

1. If High and Low are blocked under Temperature and if the Humidity columns are to be as wide as the Temperature columns, columns 4 and 5 will stretch across \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; between columns 4 and 5 there will be \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

[Test continued in the next frame]

TEST continued (based on the table of 9-59).

2. The Season, Temperature, and Humidity sections, in turn, use \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_\_, for a total of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.
- a. If the columns are blocked under the 48-space table title, there remain for ICS \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.
- b. For about twice as much space after the unbraced head as between the braced heads, the braced heads should be separated by \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, and after column 1 there will be \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.
- c. The first braced head will start under \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ (what title word?) (what letter?)

[Test continued in the next frame]

TEST continued (see preceding two frames).

3. The High of column 4 will start under the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ (what title word?)
4. The underscore below the last braced head is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide.
5. If there is triple spacing below the title and double spacing thereafter, the table uses \_\_\_\_\_ lines. If centered on a 1/2-sheet, it would start on line \_\_\_\_\_.

[End of subsection on blocked columns]



no  
no  
16  
9 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 16), + 1 =  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  of 17, + 1 = 8 + 1 = 9]  
26 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (66 - 16), + 1 =  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  of 50, + 1 = 25 + 1 = 26]

Now a little TEST.

9-65

SOME 1969 NOBEL PRIZE WINNERS

Samuel Beckett <sup>1</sup>	Literature
ILO	Peace
Murray Gell-Mann <sup>2</sup>	Physics

*<sup>1</sup>Born in Ireland, but  
has lived mostly in France.*

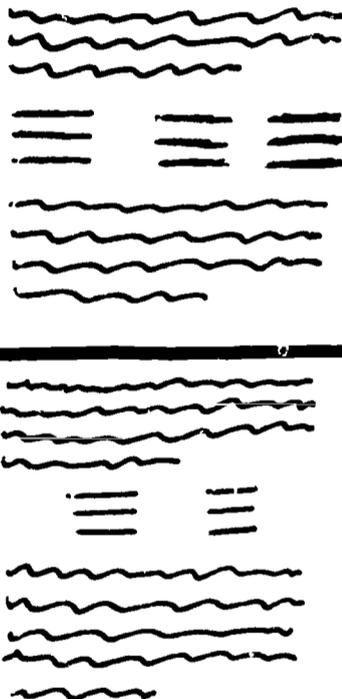
*<sup>2</sup>American*

With vertical spacing as at the left, the table is \_\_\_\_\_ lines long. Without the footnotes, it would be \_\_\_\_\_ lines long. Centered on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -sheet, the table (with footnotes) would start on line \_\_\_\_\_.

[End of subsection on table footnotes]

14  
8  
10 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 14), + 1 =  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  of 19, + 1 = 9 + 1 = 10]

9-66



The wavy lines at the left represent lines of typing in the body of a letter. The short straight lines are the rows of a table.

Depending on how wide the columns are in relation to the length of the WL (writing line) in the letter, the outside columns of the table could be blocked at the letter margins, as sketched in the

\_\_\_\_\_ example, or columns could (upper/lower)

be indented from the letter margins, as in the \_\_\_\_\_ example. (upper/lower)

upper  
lower

9-67

Usually, but not always, tables in letters are quite short (not many rows). Also, they often do not have titles-- because the earlier part of the letter describes what is in the table. Sometimes, there are not even column headings. For these reasons (but mostly to save space), table rows are often typed in single spacing--but you do double space after CHs, if there are any. In other words, when a letter contains a table, its rows \_\_\_\_\_ be single spaced. If (may/must) there is enough room, table rows should be \_\_\_\_\_ spaced. (single/double)



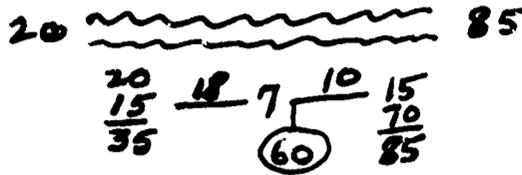
65  
 35  
 (65 -) 35 = 30  
 15 (½ of 30)  
 (20 +) 15 = 35  
 60 (35 + 18 + 7)  
 65 (the WL of the letter)

As illustrated in the last sentence of the preceding frame, one check of your table plan is that:

$$LM + \text{typed matter} + IC \text{ space} + RM = WL.$$

$$\text{as in: } 15 + (18 + 10) + 7 + 15 = 65$$

Also carry out a right-end check, as shown below. Notice



that: beginning of last column (60) + last column (10) + table RM (15) = \_\_\_\_\_, which is

the end point of the \_\_\_\_\_ (table/letter WL).

85  
 letter WL

When a table will obviously fit within letter margins, you can use any reasonable amount of IC space. But if the table is likely to be a "tight squeeze," you have to figure out how much IC space is available. Just subtract the typed matter in the table from the WL and divide the remainder among the ICs.

Assume letter margins that result in WL = 60 spaces and 4 table columns of 18, 12, 8, and 10 spaces. The typed matter in the table totals \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Remaining for ICs are \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Since, in a 4-column table, there are \_\_\_\_\_ ICs, each IC should be \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide.

48  
 12 (60 - 48)  
 3  
 4 (12 ÷ 3)

Sometimes, the space available for ICs cannot be divided equally among the ICs. To permit equal ICs, you could extend the table a space or two beyond the right-hand margin of the letter or end it a space or two short of the right margin. Or, instead, allow the ICs to differ by 1 space. For example, if 14 IC spaces have to be divided among 3 ICs, the ICs would be 5, 5, and \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide. If 17 spaces were to be divided among 3 ICs, the IC widths would be \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

4  
5, 6, (and) 5  
(any order)

The preceding example results in a table that is blocked under the WL of the letter. Such tables are planned like those that are blocked under a table title (see Frames 51 through 61). Use as the maximum width of the table (including IC space) the width of the WL in the letter. But do not type tables in that way unless you need all the space available. For example, with WL = 60 and two table columns of 10 spaces each, the table \_\_\_\_\_ (should/should not) be blocked. Otherwise, there will be too much space \_\_\_\_\_ (in the margins/between columns)

should not  
between columns

In letters, you may remember, the right margin is set 3 spaces past the point at which you want the WL to end. A SHORT pica letter would have RM set at 68, but you would probably end your WL at  $68 - 3 = \underline{\quad}$ . With LM at 20, the WL is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide. For a MEDIUM-length pica letter, (45/48) consider its WL to equal 10 more or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces (how many?) wide. For a LONG letter, add another 10 spaces to the WL, making it \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide. If you use pica type, memorize the three WLs. For short, medium, and long letters, they are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ spaces wide.

65  
45  
55  
65  
45, 55, (and) 65

At least a few lines in the body of a letter would probably be typed all the way out to the RM. For the convenience of using round numbers for elite WLs (when a table is to be blocked below the WL), consider the WL to run from LM to RM. With elite margins for a short letter at 25 and 80, the WL is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long. For medium-length letters, the WL is 10 spaces longer, or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. For long letters, add another 10, making the WL \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long. If you use elite type, memorize the three WLs. For short, medium, and long letters, they are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long.

55 (80 - 25)  
65  
75  
55, 65, (and) 75

Side margins in letters usually depend on the number of words in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter. But if a wide table will not fit within the usual letter margins, simply reduce the letter margins and make the WL longer. For example, assume a letter whose pica margins would ordinarily be set at 20 and 65, but which contains a table that requires 55 spaces. For that letter, side margins of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ should be set. In letters with tables, you should check the table width \_\_\_\_\_ you set side margins (before/after) for the letter.

body (or message)  
15 (and) 70  
before

Now a little TEST. -----  
Assume a SHORT letter that includes the table below (IC = 5)

<u>Leave</u>	<u>Flight No.</u>	<u>Depart</u>
New York	AA 416	3:00 p.m.
Minneapolis	NW 86	5:30 p.m.

1. Including IC space, the total width of the table = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. If you center it by backspacing, you will backspace \_\_\_\_\_ times, and the table LM (for the size of type on your typewriter) will be at \_\_\_\_\_ on the carriage scale. The CH for column 2 will start at \_\_\_\_\_.

[Test continued in the next frame.]

- 1. 40 (11 + 5 + 10 + 5 + 9)  
20  
31 (elite: 51 - 20)  
22 (pica: 42 - 20)  
(elite) 47  
[31 + Minneapolis + 5 IC spaces = 31 + 11 + 5 = 47]
- (pica) 38  
[22 + Minneapolis + 5 IC spaces = 22 + 11 + 5 = 38]

TEST continued (short letter--your size of type). -----

In column 1 of the table of 9-78, change Minneapolis to Detroit and prepare an arithmetic plan for the table just like the longhand one in Frame 9-71 (refer to it).

2. Using letter margins for a short letter in your size of type, your plan should show that the table LM should be set at \_\_\_\_\_ and that tab stops for columns 2 and 3 should be set at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

[Test continued in the next frame.]



Elite (margins 25, 80)

34 [(55 - 37)/2 = 9; 25 + 9 = 34]

47 (and) 62

$$\begin{array}{r} 25 \\ \underline{9} \quad 8 \quad 5 \quad \overset{10}{\quad} \quad 5 \quad \overset{9}{\quad} \quad 9 \\ 34 \quad \quad \quad \textcircled{47} \quad \quad \textcircled{62} \quad \quad \frac{71}{80} \end{array}$$

Pica (margins 20, 65)

24 [(45 - 37)/2 = 4; 20 + 4 = 24]

37 (and) 52

$$\begin{array}{r} 20 \\ \underline{4} \quad 8 \quad 5 \quad \overset{10}{\quad} \quad 5 \quad \overset{9}{\quad} \quad 4 \\ 24 \quad \quad \quad \textcircled{37} \quad \quad \textcircled{52} \quad \quad \frac{61}{65} \end{array}$$

Elite (margins 25, 80)

16 [55 - (8 + 10 + 12 + 9) = 16]

5, 5, 6 (any order)

25 (same as letter LM)

38 (or 39) [25 + 8 + 5 (or 6)]

Pica (margins 20, 65)

6 [45 - (8 + 10 + 12 + 9) = 6]

2, 2, 2

20 (same as letter LM)

30 (20 + 8 + 2)

1

51 (elite)

42 (pica)

TEST continued.

Assume the table below blocked under the WL of a short letter in your size of type.

<u>From</u>	<u>Airport</u>	<u>Flight No.</u>	<u>Depart</u>
New York	La Guardia	American 416	3:00 p.m.
Chicago	O'Hare	United 86	5:15 p.m.

3. If you count the strokes in the typed matter of the table and subtract from the WL of the letter, you will find that the space available for ICs totals \_\_\_\_\_. The 3 ICs would contain \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. The table LM would be at \_\_\_\_\_, and the tab stop for column 2 would be at \_\_\_\_\_.

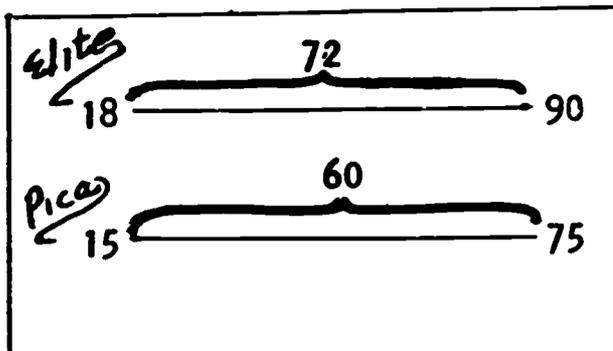
[End of subsection on letters with tables]

A table in a report or manuscript is typed just like a table in a letter. Like an ordinary paragraph it is preceded and followed by \_\_\_\_\_ blank line(s). If a report or manuscript (abbreviated ms.; plural is mss.) uses equal side margins, then the center point for table typing is the horizontal center of the page. On standard size paper, the center point on your typewriter is at \_\_\_\_\_.

It is quite common to bind longer reports at the left side (by staples, for example) or to enclose them in a binder or folder--just as the pages of a book are bound within hard covers. If so, in order not to hide the left edges of the typing, side-bound mss. use a left margin that is wider than the right margin. With a 1" right margin, the left margin would be 1½" or 2". For a 1½" LM on your typewriter set the LM at \_\_\_\_\_; for a 2" LM, set it at \_\_\_\_\_.

- 18 (elite)
- 15 (pica)
- 24 (elite)
- 20 (pica)

9-83



In reports, the horizontal center for table typing is not the center of the page, but the center of the writing line. As shown at the left, with elite margins (in a side-bound ms.) of

18 and 90, the WL (writing line) is  $90 - 18 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces long. Its center is at  $18 + \frac{1}{2}$  of 72, which equals  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . In the same way, the center of the pica WL is at  $15 + \frac{1}{2}$  of  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ , which equals  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . With side margins set as above, if you center tables by the backspace method, in elite type you would start backspacing from  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ ; in pica, from  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ .

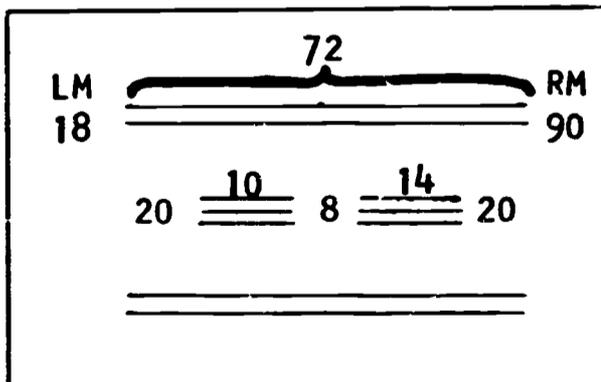
- 72
- 54 (18 + 36)
- 60
- 45 (15 + 30)
- 54
- 45

9-84

Assume a side-bound elite ms. with LM = 2" and RM = 1". The WL has  $8\frac{1}{2}"$  minus  $3" = 5\frac{1}{2}"$  or 66 spaces. If a table in such a report were simple enough to center by backspacing, you would start to backspace from LM + half the spaces in the WL; that is, from  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  on the carriage scale. In pica type (10 spaces to the inch), with LM = 2" and RM = 1", the WL would be  $8\frac{1}{2}" - 3" = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  inches or  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces long. Its midpoint would be at  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  on the carriage scale.

- 57 (24 +  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 66)
- 5 $\frac{1}{2}$
- 55 (5 $\frac{1}{2}$  x 10)
- 47 (20 +  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 55)

9-85



In a report, the available table space is not the width of the page (102 elite or 85 pica), but the spaces in the WL. At the left, the WL =  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces, and the 2-column table uses  $10 + 8 + 14 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces.

Remaining for table margins are  $72 - \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces. Each of the two table margins therefore =  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces. Since the report LM is at 18, the table LM would be set at  $18 + \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . A tab stop for column 2 would be set at  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . Check:  $20 + 10 + 8 + 14 + 20 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ .

72  
 32  
 (72 - ) 32 = 40  
 20 (½ of 40)  
 (18 + ) 20 = 38  
 56 (38 + 10 + 8)  
 72

90  
 report WL

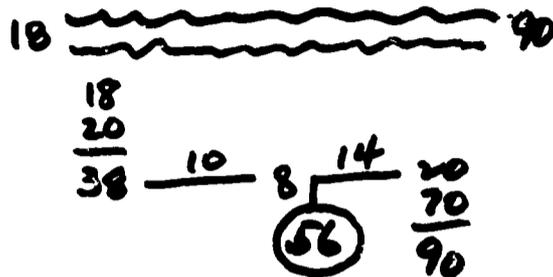
66 (90 - 24)  
 51 (8 + 20 + 12 + 11)  
 15 (66 - 51)  
 5 (15 ÷ 3)  
 24 (the report LM)  
 37 (24 + 8 + 5)

As illustrated in the last sentence of the preceding frame, one check of your table plan is that:

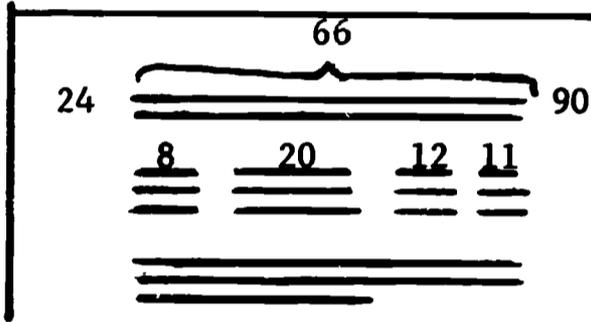
$$\text{LM} + \text{typed matter} + \text{IC space} + \text{RM} = \text{WL}$$

as in:  $20 + (10 + 14) + 8 + 20 = 72$

Also carry out a right-end check, as shown below. Notice



that: beginning of last column (56) + last column (14) + table RM (20) = \_\_\_\_\_, which is the end point of the \_\_\_\_\_ (table/report WL)



Sometimes a table is wide enough to use up the full width of the WL in the report. If so, you must determine in advance how much space is available for ICs; then block the table.

Above, a 2" LM and a 1" RM lead to an elite WL of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. The typed matter in the columns uses \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Remaining for ICs are \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. With 3 ICs, each one would contain \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Column 1 would start at \_\_\_\_\_; column 2 would start at \_\_\_\_\_.

Sometimes the space available for ICs cannot be divided equally among the ICs. To permit equal ICs, you could extend the table a space or two beyond the right margin of the report--or end it a space or two short of the RM. Instead, you could allow the ICs to differ by 1 space. For example, if 11 spaces have to be divided among 3 ICs, the ICs would be 4, 4, and \_\_\_\_\_. If 16 spaces were to be divided among 3 ICs, the IC widths would be \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

3  
5, 5, 6 (any order)

Technical or professional reports often have several (or many) tables. For that reason it is customary to number tables serially (in 1-2-3 order)--using arabic (not Roman) numbers. The table number is usually centered a double space above the table title. Compare:

Table 12 AVERAGE TYPING SPEED		Table XII. AVERAGE TYPING SPEED
----------------------------------	--	---------------------------------

The preferred way to label tables is shown in the example at the \_\_\_\_\_, above.  
(left/right)

left

Now a little TEST. . . . . .  
Assume a report with LM of 1½" and RM of 1" (using the size of type on your typewriter). Also assume IC = 6 in the table below, included in that report.

Table 3  
EFFICIENCY RATINGS OF EMPLOYEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Rating</u>	<u>With Firm</u>
Arthur Henry	Excellent	8 years
William Goldman	Very good	6 years

1. The report WL is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long.
  - a. The center point of the WL is at \_\_\_\_\_ on the scale.
2. The table, including IC space, uses \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

[Test continued in the next frame]

TEST continued (based on the table of 9-90). . . . . .

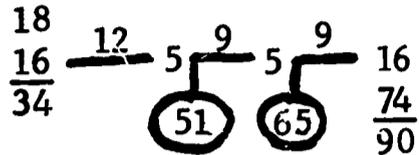
1. (Elite) 72 (90 - 18)  
(Pica) 60 (75 - 15)
  - a. (Elite) 54 [18 + ½ of (90 - 18)]  
(Pica) 45 [15 + ½ of (75 - 15)]
2. 45 (15 + 6 + 9 + 6 + 9)

3. To center the table of 9-90 by backspace methods, you would backspace (from the center point of the WL at \_\_\_\_\_) a total of \_\_\_\_\_ times--resulting in a table LM at \_\_\_\_\_. The second column would begin at \_\_\_\_\_.
4. In column 1 of the table change William Goldman to William Gold and change the IC from 6 to 5. Write an arithmetic plan for the table like that of Frame 9-86.  
Your plan should show the table LM set at \_\_\_\_\_, and tab stops for columns 2 and 3 set at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The sixth table in a series is preferably numbered \_\_\_\_\_.  
(6/VI)

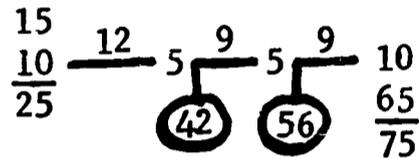
[End of subsection on tables in side-bound reports]

3. 54 (elite); 45 (pica)  
 22 (½ of 45)  
 pica 23 (45 - 22)  
 elite 32 (54 - 22)  
 pica 44 (23 + 15 + 6)  
 elite 53 (32 + 15 + 6)

4. elite (LM 34; tabs  
 51 and 65)



pica (LM 25; tabs  
 42 and 56)



5. 6

19 (50 - 31)

6, 6, 7 (any order)

In real life, it is the typist who must decide how much space to leave between columns in a table. If the body of a table is to be blocked under its title (or under the writing line of a letter or report), arithmetic is used to determine in advance the IC space. For example, if a 4-column table whose typed matter totals 31 spaces is to be blocked under a 50-space table title, there remain for ICs \_\_\_ spaces. These would be divided among the 3 ICs as follows: \_\_\_, \_\_\_, and \_\_\_.

GOVERNMENT OFFICIALS--1970

<u>State</u>	<u>Governor</u>	<u>Senior Senator</u>
New York	Rockefeller Rep.	Javits Rep.
Maine	Curtis Dem.	Smith Rep.
	.....	.. ....

The information above is grouped into two pairs of columns, more widely separated from the "State" column. In tables that require unequal IC space, use a "2 to 1" rule. Whatever the narrowest IC space is, double it for the next wider space and double it again for still wider space. As shown by the dots above, the narrowest IC uses \_\_\_ spaces. Between the "Governor" and "Senator" columns are \_\_\_ spaces and, after the "State" column, \_\_\_ spaces.



- 2  
 4  
 8

Following a 2-to-1 rule for the table above, if 4 spaces are left between columns 1 and 2, between columns 3 and 4 leave \_\_\_ spaces and, between columns 2 and 3, \_\_\_ spaces. If you centered the table sketched above by backspace methods, after backspacing for the typed matter, for the total IC space you would backspace another \_\_\_ times.

9-95

4  
3  
3 [(4 + 8 + 4) ÷ 2 = 16/2 = 8]

In tables that require unequal spacing, follow the 2-to-1 rule whenever there is enough space to do so. Otherwise, reduce the difference in spaces, but try to assign a difference that the eye can see. Compare:

A) \_\_\_\_\_ 12      \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
B) \_\_\_\_\_ 8      \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Strict 2-to-1 spacing is shown in example \_\_\_\_\_, above.  
(A/B)

Reduced (but still different) IC spacing is illustrated in example \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A/B)

9-96

A  
B

In tables that are blocked (under the table title or under the writing line of a letter or report), to determine the IC space subtract the typed matter in the table from the width of the title or WL and divide the difference among the ICs. In a table with columns of 8-12-20 spaces blocked under a 50-space title, each IC should contain \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

If unequal IC spacing is desired, 

8	xx	12	x	20
---	----	----	---	----

 make it as close as possible to 2-to-1; x spaces and xx spaces. With  $50 - (8 + 12 + 20) = 10$  IC spaces to be divided by three x's,  $x = 10 \div 3 = 3$ . Use 3 spaces between columns 2 and 3 and, between columns 1 and 2,  $10 - 3 =$  \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. With 20 IC spaces to be divided: \_\_\_\_\_ xxxx \_\_\_\_\_ xx \_\_\_\_\_ x \_\_\_\_\_ leave, between columns 1 and 2, \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

9-97

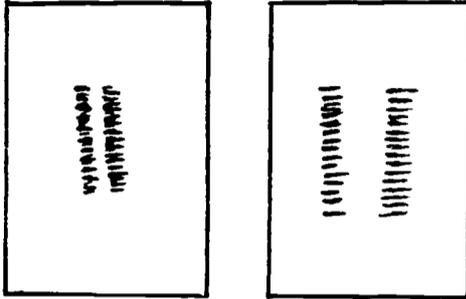
5 [50 - (8 + 12 + 20)] ÷ 2 =  
(50 - 40) / 2 = 10 / 2 = 5]  
7  
11 [xxxx + xx + x = 7x; if 7x =  
20, x = 20/7 = 3, and xx =  
6--for a total so far of  
9. With 20 IC spaces  
available, there remain  
20 - 9 = 11 spaces to put  
between columns 1 and 2]

A table that is not blocked (under a table title, for example) and that does not require unequal IC spacing can use any reasonable IC space. Often, about a half-inch between columns will be about right. A half-inch equals \_\_\_\_\_ elite or \_\_\_\_\_ pica spaces.  
There is a slight advantage to using an even number of IC spaces. Then, no matter how many ICs there are, the total will always be an even number--avoiding a leftover space. As between a 5- or a 6-space IC, it is more convenient to use \_\_\_\_\_; as between an IC of 7 or 8, use \_\_\_\_\_.

6 (elite)  
5 (pica)  
6  
8

9-98

Of course, in a table with many or wide columns, you might not be able to leave as much as a half-inch, or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, between columns. On the other hand, in a narrow 2-column table typed on a full 8½" sheet of standard-size paper, the side margins would be much too wide if you left, between columns, only \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.



The columns are crowded too close together in the illustration at the \_\_\_\_\_ (left/right).

5 or 6  
5 or 6  
left

9-99

A 2-column table with very wide columns could require more horizontal space than a 5-column table with very narrow columns. More often, the more columns there are, the wider the table is likely to be. Therefore, it is not sensible to use the same IC space in all tables. In general, the fewer the columns, the \_\_\_\_\_ the IC space. If an IC of 10 spaces is used in a 2-column table, in a 3-column table you should probably use between columns \_\_\_\_\_ than 10 spaces.

more  
less

9-100

There will sometimes be exceptions (when the columns are unusually wide or unusually narrow), but the spacing listed in the table below will often lead to attractive work.

No. of Columns	IC Space Between Columns
2	10-12
3	6-8
4	4-6
5	3-4
6+	2-4

If the table at the left were to be typed on full 8½" paper, between columns there should be \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. For the table of Frame 9-90 (refer to it), use an IC of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

9-101

10-12 (in a 2-column table)  
6-8 (in a 3-column table)

Of course you know that in tables (and in all typing) unless there is no other way to fit the materials across the page, side margins should not be less than 1 inch (on each side). A 3-column table would ordinarily use an IC of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. But if the columns were very wide and you found that leaving that amount of IC space resulted in a left margin (pica or elite) at 8 on the carriage scale, what should you do? \_\_\_\_\_.

When you have selected an IC for a table that looks quite wide, \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Check what the LM will be before you type
- b. Start to type and hope for the best

(a/b)

9-102

6-8  
reduce the IC space  
(or equivalent wording)

Columns should not be so far apart that the eye "loses its place" as it reads across a table row. Therefore, avoid leaving more than about 10-12 spaces between columns. If more than that is unavoidable, use "leaders"--a series of spaced periods that "lead" the eye across a gap, as in the table of contents for this section (Frame 9-00, refer to it). In Frame 9-00, the longest leader is the one after the subsection entitled \_\_\_\_\_.

Notice that the spaced periods \_\_\_\_\_ lined up vertically. (are/are not)

Braced headings  
(or Table footnotes)  
are

9-103

To line up leaders vertically, after you type the last word in the first item, space once. Then look at the carriage scale to see whether you are at an odd- or at an even-numbered space. Whichever it is, start each leader in a space that is also odd (or even). But be sure to leave at least 1 blank space before the first period. Then alternate periods with space-bar taps--stopping 2 or 3 spaces short of the column after the leaders.

Horizontal centering at the typewriter . . . . 19  
Table typing in reports 31

28↑

even

After striking the s of reports in line 2, above, your carriage is at 28 on the scale. Your first period should start at \_\_\_\_\_.

(28/29/30)

Now a little TEST. . . . . .

30 (the first even-numbered space after leaving 1 blank space)

1. If a 5-column table whose typed matter totals 48 spaces is to be blocked under a 52-space table title, the IC widths will be \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_.
2. If unequal IC spacing is in a 2-to-1 ratio, if the narrowest IC is 5 spaces wide, the next wider IC will have \_\_\_\_ spaces.
3. With exceptions (for very wide or very narrow columns), a 3-column table should use an IC of \_\_\_\_ space; a 4-column table, an IC of \_\_\_\_ spaces.

(Test continued in the next frame)

TEST continued. . . . . .

1. 3, 3, 4, 4 (any order)
2. 10
3. 6-8  
4-6

4. To block the table sketched below under a 45-space title  

$$\underline{\quad 10 \quad} \text{ xx } \underline{\quad 8 \quad} \text{ x } \underline{\quad 6 \quad} \text{ x } \underline{\quad 6 \quad}$$
between columns 1 and 2, leave \_\_\_\_ spaces.
5. The row of periods used to carry the eye across a wide IC space is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. After each period there is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(another period/a space)

[End of subsection on IC spacing]

4. 7  
[45 - (10 + 8 + 6 + 6) =  
45 - 30 = 15. xx + x  
+ x = 4x, and x = 15/4  
= 4. With each of  
two x's = 4, 8 of the  
15 IC spaces are used  
up. There remain (to  
put between columns 1  
and 2) 15 - 8 = 7 spaces.]
5. leader  
a space

When you complete this section, you should know:

- 1. How to center vertically business letters of various lengths--according to each of two different letter arrangements:
  - a. Distance from top of page to date varies with letter length
  - b. Distance from date to inside address varies with letter length

10-0

Section 10  
Vertical Margins for Business Letters

34 Frames

10-1

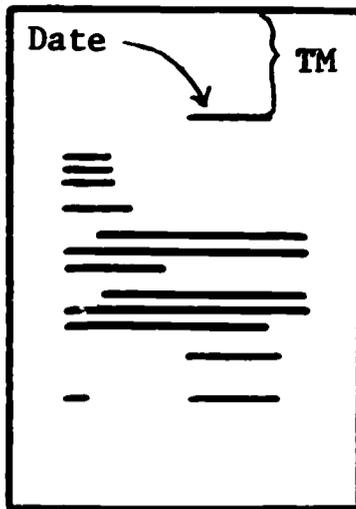
An attractively arranged business letter is one whose horizontal and vertical margins are appropriate to the length of the letter. The longer the letter, the \_\_\_\_\_  
(more/less)  
space it will take on the page. The more space the letter takes on the page, the \_\_\_\_\_ the margins.  
(wider/narrower)

more  
narrower

10-2

The attractiveness of the business letters you type will depend, in part, on whether you make the right decisions about how much space to leave in the \_\_\_\_\_.

margins



You have to make decisions about the side, or horizontal, margins. You also have to make decisions about the top and bottom, or \_\_\_\_\_, margins. In a letter, the first thing typed is the date. The TM (top margin) in a letter, as illustrated at the left, is the distance from the top of the page to the \_\_\_\_\_.

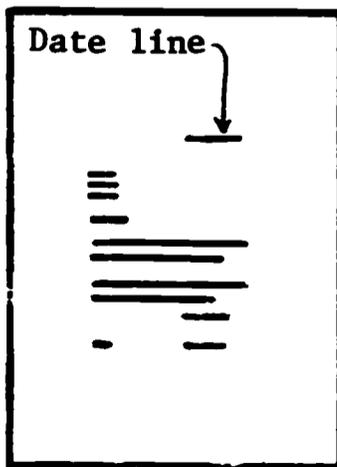
vertical date

In connection with vertical margins, there are two basic letter arrangements. In one of them, the date is considered part of the letter. Its distance from the top of the page changes with the length of the letter. The date line "moves" up or down--according to how long the letter is. It can therefore be called a "moving date line."\*

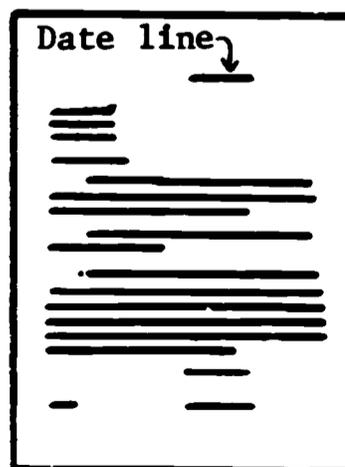
As compared to a short letter, a longer letter takes more space on the page; therefore, its date would be typed \_\_\_\_\_ on the page.  
(higher/lower)

\*In the other letter arrangement, the date is typed a fixed distance from the top of the page--regardless of the length of the letter. "Fixed" date lines are discussed in Frames 21 to 30 later in this section.

higher



A

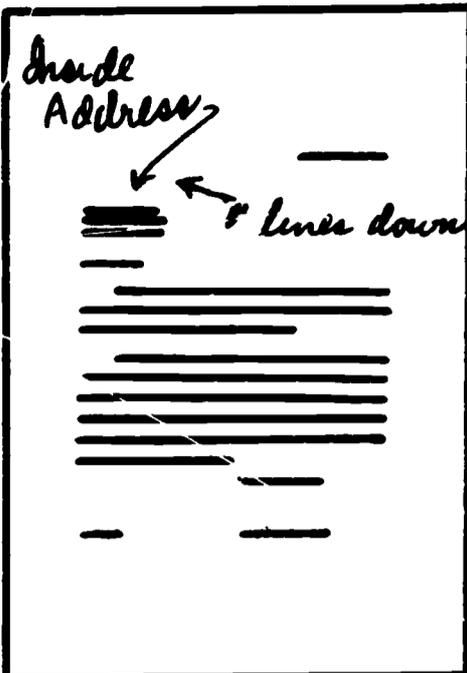


B

The longer of the two letters at the left is letter \_\_\_\_\_. Therefore its date line is \_\_\_\_\_ on the page. The letter with the wider margins is \_\_\_\_\_, the one that is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(shorter/longer)

B  
higher  
A  
shorter

10-6



A "moving date line" is one whose distance from the top of the page depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter.

Examine the sketch at the left. Notice that after the date (no matter how long the letter is), in order to reach the next part of the letter, called the \_\_\_\_\_,

you space down \_\_\_\_\_ times.

length  
inside address  
4

10-7

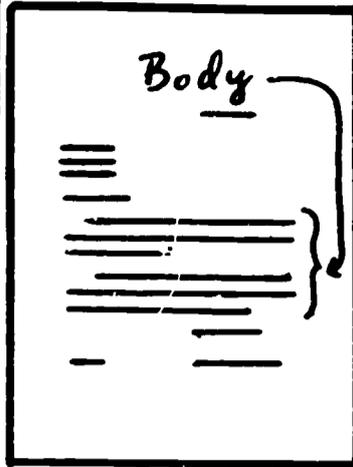
In a "moving date line" letter style, after you type the date, you space down \_\_\_\_\_ times to the \_\_\_\_\_. As the length of the letter changes, the position of the date line \_\_\_\_\_ change, whereas the number of \_\_\_\_\_ (does/does not) line spaces after the date \_\_\_\_\_ change. (does/does not)

4  
inside address  
does  
does not

10-8

In an ordinary letter, the amount of space it will take on the page depends almost entirely on how many WORDS are in the body (or message) of the letter. As compared to a 150-word letter, a 120-word letter would take \_\_\_\_\_ (more/less) space on the page. Therefore, its date line would be \_\_\_\_\_ on the page. In letters of any length, (higher/lower) after you type the date you space down \_\_\_\_\_ times and then type the \_\_\_\_\_.

less  
lower  
4  
inside address



In typewriting textbooks, with few exceptions, there is a word count alongside each letter. It shows how many WORDS are in the letter (a) as a whole and (b) in its BODY or MESSAGE. To determine the length of a letter in a typing textbook, do you have to count or guess or estimate the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the body or \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter? \_\_\_\_\_ (yes/no)

But can you imagine any employer asking his typist to:  
"Please type this 137-word letter for me"? \_\_\_\_\_ (yes/no)

words  
message  
no  
no

In another section of this program, estimating the length of a letter (and other kinds of typed material) will be discussed. For now, whether you estimate letter length by yourself or use the word count in typing textbooks, you must know how many words are in the \_\_\_\_\_ of a letter--because the length of the letter determines the location of the \_\_\_\_\_.

body  
(or message)  
date

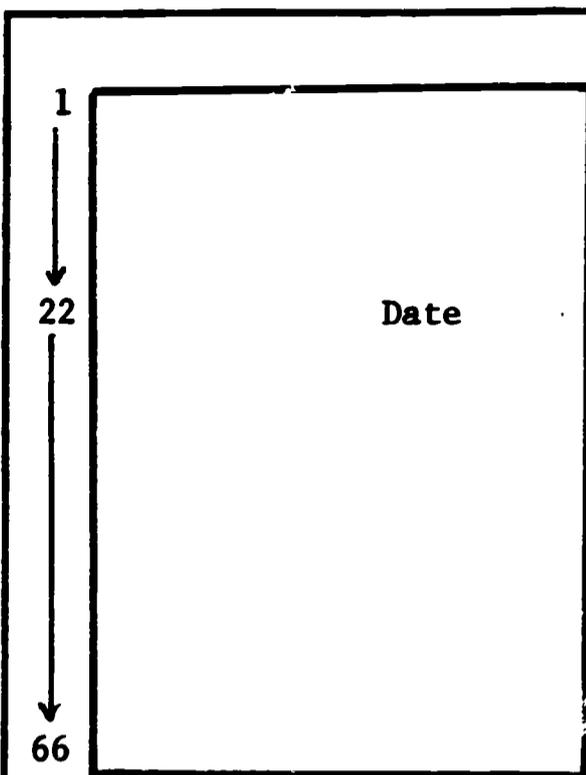
There is a simple rule that tells you how many lines from the top edge to type the date. The location of the date depends on the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter. Here's the rule.

**RULE:** For a letter of up to 60 words, put the date on line 22. For each additional 20 words or fraction of 20 words, raise the date 1 line.

If words = 60 or less, date line = 22. For 61 to 80 words, the date goes up 1 line to line 21. For 81-100 words, go up another line to line \_\_\_\_; for 101-120 words, place the date on line \_\_\_\_\_, and so on.

words  
body  
(or message)  
20  
19

10-12



For a letter of 60 words or less in the message, the distance from the top of the page to the date is \_\_\_\_ lines. The date is raised 1 line for each additional \_\_\_\_ words or fraction of \_\_\_\_ words.

22  
20  
20

10-13

For a letter of longer than 60 words, we want to know how many lines above line 22 to type the date. We want to know how many lines to \_\_\_\_\_ line 22.  
(add to/subtract from)

subtract from

10-14

Assume a letter whose message contains 96 words. To locate its date line, count on your fingers. Count by 20's, starting at 60, until you pass 96. Start with a closed fist and straighten a finger for each 20, like this: "60" . . . "80" (1 finger) . . . "100" (2 fingers). Subtract the number of straightened fingers from the line number on which a letter of up to 60 words is placed; that is, subtract from \_\_\_\_ . For the 96-word letter, the date would be placed on line \_\_\_\_ - 2 = \_\_\_\_ .

22

22 (- 2) = 20

10-15

Count on your fingers as you read this frame.  
 Assume a letter of 128 words. Count: "60" . . . "80"  
 (1 finger) . . . "100" (2 fingers) . . . "120" (3 fin-  
 gers . . . "140" (4 fingers). Place the date for that  
 128-word letter on line 22 - 4 = line \_\_\_\_\_. For a letter  
 of 103 words you would straighten \_\_\_\_\_ fingers, and its  
 date would be on line \_\_\_\_\_.

18

3

19

10-16

To determine the location of the date line, start your  
 count at \_\_\_\_\_ and point or straighten your first finger  
 when you reach \_\_\_\_\_. For a 106-word letter you would stop  
 your count at \_\_\_\_\_ (100/120). That is--using the 20-word group  
 101-120 as an example--you stop your count when you reach  
 the \_\_\_\_\_ border of the group that contains the  
 (lower/upper)  
 number of words in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter.

60

80

120

upper

body

(or message)

10-17

All you have to remember to locate a moving date line in  
 a letter is:

1. Start to count at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Count by \_\_\_\_\_'s, straightening a finger for each \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Subtract the number of straightened fingers from the  
 line number on which the date of a letter of up to 60  
 words would be located; that is, subtract from \_\_\_\_\_.

The count of course applies to the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in  
 the \_\_\_\_\_ of a letter.

- 1. 60
  - 2. 20  
20
  - 3. 22
- words  
body  
(or message)

10-18

Count on your fingers and fill in the blanks.

	<u>Words in Body</u>	<u>No. of Fingers</u>	<u>Date Line</u>
Example	157	<u>5</u>	<u>17</u>
	112	_____	_____
	69	_____	_____
	132	_____	_____
	84	_____	_____
	116	_____	_____
	92	_____	_____

- (112) 3 19
- (69) 1 21
- (132) 4 18
- (84) 2 20
- (116) 3 19
- (92) 2 20

10-19

Don't fall asleep in counting by 20's. And don't take ages to space down to the date line. Line up the top edge of your paper with the edge of the scale--so that if you were to strike a key, it would just miss the top edge of the paper. Then set your line space regulator for triple spacing and space down rapidly, counting by 3's, (3, 6, 9, 12, etc.), until you are as close as possible to the desired line. Then reset for single spacing and space down the final line or two.

To reach line 19, use \_\_\_\_\_ triple spaces + \_\_\_\_\_ single space(s). To reach line 20, use \_\_\_\_\_ triple spaces + \_\_\_\_\_ single space(s). To reach line 18, use \_\_\_\_\_ triple spaces + \_\_\_\_\_ single space(s).

- 6 (+) 1
- 6 (+) 2
- 6 (+) 0

10-20

Fill in the blanks below.

	<u>Date Line</u>	<u>Number of Carriage Re- turns from the Top Edge</u>	
		<u>Triple</u>	<u>+ Single</u>
Example	14	<u>4</u>	<u>2</u>
	17	_____	_____
	21	_____	_____
	16	_____	_____
	19	_____	_____

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

- (17) 5 + 2
- (21) 7 + 0
- (16) 5 + 1
- (19) 6 + 1

10-21

The second of the two basic letter arrangements uses a "fixed date line." In it, regardless of the length of the letter, the date is placed 14 lines from the top edge of the page. What varies with letter length is the distance between the date and the next part of the letter-- the \_\_\_\_\_.

inside address

10-22

A

B

In the two letters at the left, the distance from top-of-page to the date line \_\_\_\_\_ (is/is not) the same.

But because the longer of the two letters at the left is \_\_\_\_\_, in it, \_\_\_\_\_ (A/B) the distance from date to inside address is \_\_\_\_\_ (less/greater).

is  
A  
less

10-23

A "fixed date" is on the 14th line from the top edge of the paper. From there, the number of line spaces down to the inside address depends on the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter. If some letter uses 9 line spaces between date and inside address, a shorter letter will use \_\_\_\_\_ line spaces. As the length of a \_\_\_\_\_ (fewer/more) letter increases, the distance between date and inside address \_\_\_\_\_ (increases/decreases).

words  
body  
(or message)  
more  
decreases

10-24

For a fixed date line, the rule for the number of times to space down after the date is identical in its basis to the rule for a moving date line.

RULE: For a letter of up to 60 words, use 12 line spaces between date and inside address. For each additional 20 words or fraction of 20 words, reduce the number of line spaces by 1.

If words (in body) = 60 or less, use 12 line spaces after the date. For 61 to 80 words, use 11 line spaces; for 81-100 words, use \_\_\_\_ line spaces; for 101-120 words, use \_\_\_\_ line spaces, and so on.

10  
9

10-25

No matter how many words are in the body of a letter, a "fixed" date line is on line \_\_\_\_\_. For a letter of up to 60 words, space down \_\_\_\_\_ lines after the date. For each additional \_\_\_\_\_ words or fraction of \_\_\_\_\_ words, space down 1 line \_\_\_\_\_.  
(more/less)

14  
12  
20  
20  
less

10-26

Assume a letter whose message contains 84 words. Use the same counting technique that was described for letters with a moving date line. That is, begin at 60 and count by 20's until you pass 84. Start with a closed fist and straighten a finger for each 20. For example: "60" . . . "80" (1 finger) . . . "100" (2 fingers). Subtract the number of fingers from the number of line spaces between date and inside address used for a 60-word letter; that is, from \_\_\_\_\_. For the 84-word letter, after typing the date on line \_\_\_\_\_, you would space down \_\_\_\_\_ - 2 = \_\_\_\_\_ times.

12  
14  
12 ( - 2) = 10

10-27

Count on your fingers as you read this frame.  
Assume a letter of 144 words. Count: "60" . . . "80" (1 finger) . . . "100" (2 fingers) . . . "120" (3 fingers) . . . "140" (4 fingers) . . . "160" (5 fingers). After typing the date on line \_\_\_\_\_, for the 144-word letter space down  $12 - 5 = 7$  times to the inside address. For a letter of 117 words, you would straighten \_\_\_\_\_ fingers and space down \_\_\_\_\_ times after the date.

14  
3  
9

10-28

Start your count at \_\_\_\_\_ and point or straighten your first finger when you reach \_\_\_\_\_. For a 128-word letter, you would stop your count at \_\_\_\_\_ . That is--using the (120/140)  
20-word group 121-140 as an example--you stop your count when you reach the \_\_\_\_\_ border of the group that (lower/upper)  
includes the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter.

60  
80  
140  
upper  
words  
body  
(or message)

10-29

All you have to remember about fixed-date-line letters is:  
1. Type the date on line \_\_\_\_\_.  
To determine how many times to space down after the date:  
2. Start to count at \_\_\_\_\_.  
3. Count by \_\_\_\_\_'s, straightening a finger for each \_\_\_\_\_.  
4. Subtract the number of fingers from the number of lines that would be used between date and inside address in a letter of up to 60 words; that is, subtract from \_\_\_\_\_.  
The count of course applies to the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of a letter.

- 1. 14
  - 2. 60
  - 3. 20  
20
  - 4. 12
- words
- body  
(or message)

10-30

Count on your fingers and fill in the blanks.

	<u>Words in Body</u>	<u>No. of Line Spaces To Inside Address</u>
Example	57	<u>12</u>
	117	_____
	139	_____
	66	_____
	124	_____
	92	_____
	157	_____

- 9
- 8
- 11
- 8
- 10
- 7

10-31

Both fixed date line and moving date line procedures are in common use. If you expect to get a job as a typist, it is a good idea to master both procedures, so that you can use the procedure preferred by your employer.

With a moving date line, the thing that changes with the length of the letter is \_\_\_\_\_

With a fixed date line, what changes is \_\_\_\_\_

- date line position--
- its distance from
- the top of the page
- distance between date
- and inside address
- (or equivalent answers)

10-32

The selection of letter margins (both vertical and horizontal) depends on the length of the letter. The procedures described here (and in the next section for side margins) are based on the average letter. They will not lead to perfect results for all letters.

Fortunately, you can lower a letter that turns out to be too high on the page by lowering the reference initials--the initials that identify (sometimes) the dictator or signer of the letter and (always) the person who \_\_\_\_\_ the letter.

typed

10-33

Before you type the reference initials (and while your letter is still in the typewriter) check your top and bottom margins. If they seem equal, type the reference initials on the same line as the typed signature or title of the writer of the letter. If the letter seems high, \_\_\_\_\_ the initials from 1 up to (but not more than) (raise/lower) about 4 lines. The main thing is to check your vertical margins \_\_\_\_\_ you type the initials. (before/after)

lower

before

10-34

Now a little TEST. . . . . .

1. For a letter of up to \_\_\_\_ words, a moving date is on line \_\_\_\_, and you space down \_\_\_\_ times after the date.
2. In a letter of 128 words, a moving date would be on line \_\_\_\_, and you would reach it by \_\_\_\_ triple spaces + \_\_\_\_ single space(s).
3. A fixed date is always on line \_\_\_\_.
4. For a fixed-date letter of up to \_\_\_\_ words, space down \_\_\_\_ times after the date; for a 98-word letter, space down \_\_\_\_ times.

1. 60  
22  
4
2. 18  
6  
0
3. 14
4. 60  
12  
10

When you complete this section you should know:

Where to set side margins for letters of various lengths--so that the resulting letter will be horizontally well placed on the page.

11-0

Section 11

Horizontal Margins for Business Letters

22 Frames

11-1

Vertical placement of a letter depends on letter length. Horizontal or side margins for a letter also depend on the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of a letter.

words  
body  
(or message)

11-2

Vertical placement of a letter changes by 1 line for every 20 words in the body. Side margins or horizontal placement of business letters changes with every 100 words. That is: short letters are those with up to 100 words; medium length letters have up to 100 more words; that is from 101 to \_\_\_\_\_ words; long letters are those with more than \_\_\_\_\_ words.

200

200

11-3

For the purposes of horizontal placement, letters are considered to have three lengths: Short, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. Short letters are those with up to \_\_\_\_\_ words. The next length includes those that contain from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ words. Finally, there are letters that contain more than \_\_\_\_\_ words.

medium

long

100

101 (to) 200

200

11-4

In deciding on the horizontal placement or side margins for letters, consider what is called the writing line: the number of spaces between the left and right margins. If pica margins for some letter were set at 10 (left) and 75 (right), the writing line would be  $75 - 10 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces long. If elite margins for some letter were set at 25 (left) and 80 (right), that letter would have a 55-space \_\_\_\_\_.

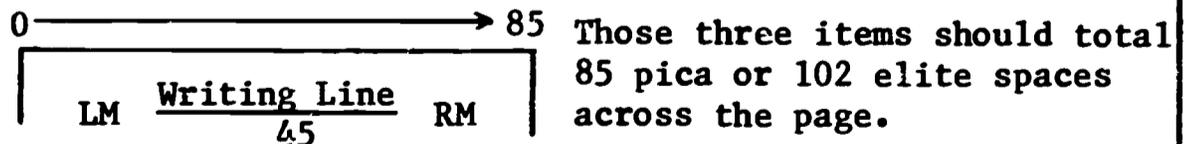
65

writing line

11-5

Horizontally, you can think of a letter as consisting of:

LM (left margin) + writing line + RM (right margin).



If you use a pica writing line of 45 spaces, then  $85 - 45 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces remain to be divided equally between the two side margins. LM would be set at \_\_\_\_\_. Since LM should equal RM, the writing line (the lines of typing in the body of the letter) should end as close as possible to  $85 - \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ , which equals \_\_\_\_\_.

40  
20  
20  
65

11-6

The preceding frame illustrates that:  
side margins + writing line = total spaces across the page.  
Some typists think of horizontal placement of letters in terms of the length of the writing line. Others prefer to think in terms of the width of the margins. In either case, the longer the letter, the \_\_\_\_\_ the writing line and the \_\_\_\_\_ the side margins.  
(shorter/longer)  
(narrower/wider)

longer  
narrower

11-7

Everything discussed so far applies equally to pica and elite typewriters. At this point it will be more convenient to discuss margin setting for the two sizes of type separately. Therefore, if your typewriter uses pica type, continue with this and the following frames. If your typewriter uses elite type, skip this and the next 8 frames and go NOW to Frame 11-16.

In pica type there are 10 spaces to the horizontal inch and--across paper that is 8½ inches wide--a total of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Since 1 inch contains \_\_\_\_\_ pica spaces, for a 1-inch LM, set the LM at \_\_\_\_\_; for a 2" LM, set it at \_\_\_\_\_.

85  
10  
10  
20

11-8

For a short letter (of up to \_\_\_\_\_ words), use a 2" LM. That is, set the LM at \_\_\_\_\_. For each additional 100 words (or fraction of 100 words), make the LM a HALF-inch \_\_\_\_\_.  
(narrower/wider)  
REMEMBER: As letter length increases from short to medium to long, progressively reduce the LM a \_\_\_\_\_ inch at a time. In pica type, a half-inch (half/full) contains \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

100  
20  
narrower  
half  
5 (½ of 10)

11-9

For a short letter, set LM at 20. For a medium-length letter, make the LM narrower by \_\_\_\_\_ inch(es) or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; set it at 20 - \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_. For a long letter (200+ words in the body), reduce the LM by another \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; set it at \_\_\_\_\_.

½  
5  
(20 -) 5 = 15  
5  
10

11-10

In a short letter, if LM = 20, then RM should also equal \_\_\_\_\_. Each line in the body of the letter should end as close as possible to 85 - \_\_\_\_\_, which equals \_\_\_\_\_. In a medium-length letter, LM = \_\_\_\_\_, and the lines in the body of the letter should end as close as possible to 85 - \_\_\_\_\_ which equals \_\_\_\_\_. In a long letter, whose LM is at \_\_\_\_\_, the lines in the body should end as close as possible to \_\_\_\_\_.

20  
20  
65  
15  
15  
70  
10  
75

11-11

In pica type, as letter length increases from short to medium to long, the end of the WLs (writing lines) move up 5 spaces at a time from 65 to \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_. But if you set your RM at one of these points (and try to reach it on each line), you would often run into the RM and have the annoyance of frequent use of the margin release key. To avoid that, set your RM 3 spaces past the point at which you want your WL to end. For a short letter, set the RM at 65 + 3 = \_\_\_\_\_. For a letter of 101-200 words, set the RM at \_\_\_\_\_; for 200+ words, set RM at \_\_\_\_\_.

11-12

70  
75  
68  
73 (70 + 3)  
78 (75 + 3)

Read across each row of the table below.

Letter Length	Inches			Pica Spaces		
	LM	WL	RM	LM	WL	RM
Short	2	4½	2	20	45	20
Medium	1½	5½	1½	15	55	15
Long	1	6½	1	10	65	10

Notice, above, that for every increase in letter length:  
 the WL gets \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ inch or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces;  
 (shorter/longer)  
 while each side margin gets \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ inch  
 (narrower/wider)  
 or \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

longer  
1  
10  
narrower

11-13

Study closely the summary of pica margin setting for business letters. Read it line by line.

Letter Length	Words	Side Margins		Set LM	End WL	Set RM
		Inches	Spaces	at	at	at
Short	-100	2	20	20	65	68
Medium	101-200	1½	15	15	70	73
Long	200+	1	10	10	75	78

Letter length increases in groups of \_\_\_\_\_ words. With increases in letter length, LM is reduced \_\_\_\_\_ spaces at a time.

100  
5

11-14

Every time you type a letter, you could refer to a table like that in the preceding frame to determine where to set your side margins. But you really shouldn't have to do so. All you need do is MEMORIZE: "short--20--5." The "short--20" means: for short letters, set LM at \_\_\_\_\_. The "5" means: for medium length letters reduce the LM by \_\_\_\_\_ spaces and, for long ones, by another \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. Whatever LM is, to locate RM just subtract LM from total spaces across the page, which is \_\_\_\_\_, and add \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

20  
5  
5  
85  
3

Now a little TEST ----- 11-15

Reread the preceding frame and its model answers. Try to answer these test questions by using the "short--20--5" formula. Try not to have to refer to Frame 11-13.

	<u>Words in Body</u>	<u>Set Margins at</u>		
		<u>Left</u>	<u>Right</u>	
1.	148	---	---	Were you able to answer the 3 questions without referring to Frame 11-13?
2.	68	---	---	
3.	231	---	---	

[This frame ends this section for those who use pica typewriters. The remaining frames deal with elite type.]

Left   Right

- 1.     15     73
- 2.     20     68
- 3.     10     78

If you said "yes,"  
CONGRATULATIONS!

11-16

There are 12 elite spaces to the horizontal inch. Across an 8½-inch page there would be a total of \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. If the side margins for some business letter were to be set at 25 (left) and 80 (right), the LM would contain \_\_\_\_\_ spaces and the RM would contain \_\_\_\_\_ - 80 = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces. In this instance it seems that LM \_\_\_\_\_ equal (does/does not)

RM.

102

25

102 (- 80) = 22

does not

11-17

Typists rarely type all the way out to the RM because it is annoying to have to use the margin release key. They generally stop a few spaces short of the RM--about 3 spaces short. In the illustration in the preceding frame (side margins at 25 and 80), many of the lines would probably end about 3 spaces short of 80, at \_\_\_\_\_. If so, the RM would contain 102 - \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ spaces, which \_\_\_\_\_ equal (is/is not)

to LM.

77  
(102 -) 77 = 25  
is

11-18

The tendency of typists to end each line a few strokes short of the RM permits margin settings for elite type that are easy to remember. For short letters (of up to \_\_\_\_\_ words) set LM at 25 and RM at 80. For each increase of 100 words (or fraction of 100 words) make each side margin 5 spaces \_\_\_\_\_ . For a letter of 101-200 words, (narrower/wider) LM would be at 25 - \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ and RM would be at 80 + \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_. For a letter of 200+ words reduce each side margin by another \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; set the LM at \_\_\_\_\_ and the RM at \_\_\_\_\_.

100  
narrower  
(25 -) 5 = 20  
(80 +) 5 = 85  
5  
15 (20 - 5)  
90 (85 + 5)

11-19

Study closely the summary of elite margin setting for business letters; read it line by line.

Letter Length	Words	Elite Margins	
		LM	RM
Short	-100	25	80
Medium	101-200	20	85
Long	200+	15	90

Letter length increases in units of \_\_\_\_\_ words. With increases in letter length, the width of each side margin is progressively \_\_\_\_\_ spaces at a time. (reduced/increased) (how many?)

100  
reduced  
5

11-20

In elite type, short letters use margins of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. A letter of 136 words would use margins of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. A letter of 243 words would use margins of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

25 (and) 80  
20 (and) 85  
15 (and) 90

11-21

It is not necessary to memorize three sets of margins. Just MEMORIZE "25--80--5." The "25" and "80" are the margins for short letters, ones of up to \_\_\_\_\_ words. The "5" means: for medium length letters (of \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ words) each side margin should be made \_\_\_\_\_ (narrower/wider) by \_\_\_\_\_ spaces; and for letters of more than \_\_\_\_\_ words, by another \_\_\_\_\_ spaces.

100  
101 (to) 200  
narrower

11-22

Now a little TEST -----

Fill in the blanks for elite type.

5  
200  
5

	Words in <u>Body</u>	Set Margins at <u>Left</u>	<u>Right</u>
1.	163	_____	_____
2.	92	_____	_____
3.	217	_____	_____

	<u>Left</u>	<u>Right</u>
1.	20	85
2.	25	80
3.	15	90

When you complete this section, you should be able to center, vertically, business letters with additional or special features, such as:

Extra paragraphs

An attention or subject line

A table

A series of numbered paragraphs

An enclosure listing

12-0

Section 12

Advanced Business Letters

40 Frames

12-1

Moving Date Line\*

For a letter of up to 60 words, type the date on line 22. For each added 20 words or fraction of 20 words, raise the date 1 line. After the date, space down 4 lines to the inside address.

For a letter of 96 words, the date is on line \_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\*See Section 10, Frames 5 to 18.

Fixed Date Line\*\*

Place date on line 14 regardless of letter length. For up to 60 words, space down 12 lines to inside address. For each added 20 words or fraction of 20 words reduce the distance to inside address by 1 line.

For a letter of 107 words, between date and inside address space down \_\_\_\_ lines.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\*\*See Section 10, Frames 21 to 30.

12-2

Moving 20 (22 - 2)

Fixed 9 (12 - 3)

The placement of a letter on the page depends mainly on the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter. However, some letters have additional features or elements that must be taken into account in deciding on vertical placement; that is, on the distance from the top of the page to the \_\_\_\_\_ or on the distance between the \_\_\_\_\_ and the inside address.

words  
body (or message)  
date  
date

12-3

For an ordinary letter of up to 60 words, a "moving" date is on line \_\_\_\_ from the top edge of the page, and you space down \_\_\_\_ times to the inside address. A fixed date is on line \_\_\_\_, and you space down \_\_\_\_ times to the inside address. For each additional 20 words or fraction of 20 words, the date line (or the distance between date and inside address) is \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ line(s).  
(increased/reduced) (how many?)

22  
4  
14  
12  
reduced  
1

12-4

The vertical placement rules given in Frame 12-1 for an ordinary letter assume:

1. A 2-paragraph letter
2. A 3-line inside address
3. No firm name below the closing
4. Identifying or reference initials on the same line as the typed signature or title and nothing below that

If a letter has more than two paragraphs, or if the inside address has more than \_\_\_\_ lines, or if there is a firm name below the closing, or if there is anything below the typed signature or \_\_\_\_\_ (Example: an enclosure listing), adjustments must be made in the \_\_\_\_\_ placement of the letter. (horizontal/vertical)

3  
title  
vertical

12-5

Each paragraph in a letter must have a blank line before it. When you base vertical placement on words in the body, are blank lines between paragraphs taken into account? \_\_\_\_\_

An extra inside-address line might use only 3 or 4 words. But does it take as much vertical space as a full line in the body of a letter? \_\_\_\_\_ Consider this list of enclo-

- Encs. 3
- 1--Check
  - 2--Form
  - 3--Envelope

sures. Are the lines used for the enclosures taken into account in the rule for vertical placement of an ordinary letter? \_\_\_\_\_

no  
yes  
no

12-6

Very truly yours,  
ACME MOVING CO.  
  
lk John Tracy  
Sales Manager  
  
Encs. 2  
1--Check  
2--Form

1 At the left, if there  
2 were no firm name, John  
3 Tracy would be on line  
4 no. \_\_\_\_\_. A firm name  
5 adds \_\_\_\_\_ lines to the  
6 depth of a letter.  
7 The enclosures, includ-  
8 ing the blank line just  
9 above them, add \_\_\_\_\_  
10 lines to the depth of  
11 the letter.  
12 EXTRA lines total \_\_\_\_\_.

5  
2  
4  
6 (2 for the firm name plus 4  
for the enclosure listing)

12-7

(1)	mp 'Enc.	Fred Cook Manager
(2)	mp Enc.	Fred Cook Manager
(3)	FC:mp Encs. 2 1--Form 2--Check	Manager
(4)	FC:mp Encs. 3 1--Form 2--Check 3--Catalog	Manager

ALL four of the illustrations  
at the left are correct.  
A blank line above Enc. is  
(permissible/required)  
The example that has no extra  
lines is no. \_\_\_\_\_.  
Example no. 2 has \_\_\_\_\_ extra  
lines.  
Example no. 4 has \_\_\_\_\_ extra  
lines.

permissible  
1  
2 (blank line + Enc.)  
5 (blank line + 4 Enc. lines)

12-8

You can see from the four illustrations in the preceding  
frame that, if the dictator's name is typed, his identify-  
ing initials \_\_\_\_\_ necessary.  
(are/are not)

If you want to lower a letter that seems too high, you can  
lower the reference initials by a few lines. Ordinarily,  
as shown by the illustrations in the preceding frame, the  
reference initials should be typed \_\_\_\_\_.  
(a/b)

- a. A double space below the typed signature or title
- b. On the same line as the typed signature or title

are not  
b

12-9

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Dear Sir:                   | 1 Dear Sir:              |
| 2                             | 2                        |
| 3 The amount shown on . . . . | 3 Subject: Invoice #147  |
|                               | 4                        |
|                               | 5 The amount shown . . . |

You can see from the examples above that a Subject line adds \_\_\_\_ lines to the depth of the letter.

2

12-10

The Kenwood Company  
Attention: Mr. Cook  
1400 Broadway  
New York, NY 10019

*Envelope*

The Kenwood Company  
1400 Broadway  
New York, NY 10019

Attention: Mr. Cook

Gentlemen:

*Letter*

To speed the sorting of mail, the post office uses an Optical Character Reader (OCR) that requires envelope addresses to be single spaced--including an Attention line, if any. The letter could be typed in the same way; OR, to make it stand out, an Attention line could be typed as at the right, above, preceded and followed by \_\_\_\_ blank line(s). If so, an Attention line adds \_\_\_\_ EXTRA line(s) to the depth of a letter.

12-11

1  
2

Assume a letter that has additional features (extra paragraphs or extra inside-address lines, an attention or subject line, a listing of enclosures). If you were to base vertical placement only on the number of words in the body of the letter, the letter would be too \_\_\_\_\_ on the page.  
(high/low)

12-12

low

Vertical center >  $\frac{\text{one}}{\text{two}}$   $\frac{\text{two}}{\text{three}}$   $\frac{\text{one}}{\text{four}}$  Assume that the dashed line at the left crosses the page at its vertical center.

If 2 lines are to be centered vertically, line 1 is typed \_\_\_ line(s) above the center. If 4 lines are to be centered vertically, line 1 is typed \_\_\_ line(s) above the center. In other words, for every TWO added lines, you raise the starting line by \_\_\_ line(s). To put it another way, raise the starting line by half the number of added lines. To center vertically a letter with 8 added lines, raise the letter by \_\_\_ lines.

12-13

1  
2  
1  
4

A moving date line for a letter of 96 words would ordinarily be on line \_\_\_\_\_. If that letter has a Subject line, it would be \_\_\_\_\_ line(s) longer. Therefore, the date would be \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ line(s); type the date on line \_\_\_\_\_ (raised/lowered) no. \_\_\_\_\_

12-14

20 (22 - 2)  
2  
raised  
1  
19

Using a fixed date line in a letter of 128 words, you would ordinarily space down after the date (to the inside address) \_\_\_\_\_ times. If that letter had an Attention line, it would be \_\_\_\_\_ line(s) longer. Therefore, the distance from the date to the inside address should be \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ (increased/reduced) \_\_\_\_\_ lines. Between date and inside address, space down \_\_\_\_\_ times.

8 (12 - 4)  
2  
reduced  
1  
7

An odd line added to a letter is treated just like an odd, leftover space in horizontal centering: you ignore it. For 4 added lines in a letter, raise the letter by \_\_\_\_ line(s). For 5 added lines, also raise the letter by \_\_\_\_ line(s). A letter with a Subject line and a list of 5 enclosures (preceded by a blank line) would be raised by \_\_\_\_ line(s).

2  
2  
4 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (2 for the Sub-  
ject line + 7 for the enclosure listing) =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 9, ignoring the odd line.]

For a 2-paragraph letter with a 3-line inside address and nothing below the typed signature or title of the dictator, vertical placement is based entirely on \_\_\_\_\_. (what?)  
\_\_\_\_\_. If the letter has additional elements or features not taken into account by the vertical placement rules for an ordinary letter, you must \_\_\_\_\_ the letter by \_\_\_\_ line(s) (lower/raise) for each \_\_\_\_ added line(s).

number of words in the body  
raise  
1  
2

The vertical placement rules allow for the blank line between paragraphs in a 2-paragraph letter--but not for the blank lines that separate additional paragraphs. Above the 2-paragraph allowance, a 3-paragraph letter has \_\_\_\_ extra paragraph(s). A 5-paragraph letter has \_\_\_\_ extra paragraph(s) and, therefore, \_\_\_\_ EXTRA blank line(s). A 5-line inside address has \_\_\_\_ EXTRA inside-address line(s).

1  
3  
3  
2

Before you type a letter, check for these extras:

1. Does the inside address have more than \_\_\_\_ lines?
2. Between the inside address and the salutation, is there a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ line?
3. Between the salutation and the body, is there a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ line?
4. Does the body have more than \_\_\_\_ paragraphs?
5. Does the letter contain, in SOLID CAPS a double space below the closing, a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Is there anything to be typed below the dictator's \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_?

1. 3
2. Attention
3. Subject
4. 2
5. FIRM NAME
6. signature (or) title (either order)

Fill in the blanks:	<u>Extra Lines</u>
4-line inside address	_____
<u>Subject</u> line	_____
4 paragraphs	_____
A firm name	_____
2 enclosures listed, with a blank line preceding	_____
TOTAL	_____

A letter with all five of the above features would be raised by \_\_\_\_ line(s).

1  
2  
2  
2  
4  

---

11

5 (½ of 11, ignoring the odd line)

To determine the location of a moving date line (or the spacing to the inside address after a fixed date line), FIRST consider the words in the body. NEXT, consider extra lines, if any. Assume a letter of 84 words that contains 4 extra lines. For 84 words, a moving date would be on line \_\_\_\_\_. Because of the 4 extra lines the date should be raised to line no. \_\_\_\_\_. For 84 words, a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_\_ line(s). Because of the 4 extra lines, space down \_\_\_\_\_ line(s) to the inside address.



3 (assuming single spacing and not counting a blank line above and below the table)

no

A table in a letter uses more vertical space than is measured by the number of words in the table. If you base vertical placement of a letter with a table only on the words in the body (including the table), the letter will be too \_\_\_\_\_ on the page. For correct vertical placement of a letter containing a table, you must consider the number of \_\_\_\_\_ in the table. You must consider the table \_\_\_\_\_ the words in the body.

(high/low)

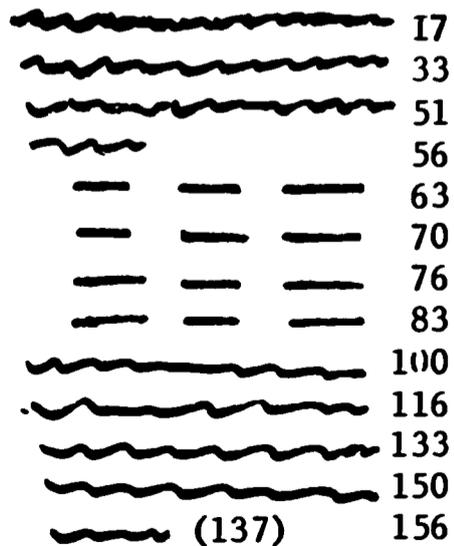
(words/lines)

(as part of/separate from)

low  
lines  
separate from

Suppose that the body of a letter (including a 20-word table) contains 130 words and that the table uses 4 lines. FIRST, decide vertical placement as if the letter had no table; base it on  $130 - 20 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  words. For it, a moving date would be on line \_\_\_\_\_; a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_\_ line spaces. NEXT, consider the table as EXTRA lines. For 4 extra lines, you would raise a moving date or reduce the line spaces after a fixed date by \_\_\_\_\_ lines. The result so far (not counting extra paragraphs yet) is: moving date on line \_\_\_\_\_; fixed date followed by \_\_\_\_\_ line spaces.

110  
19 (22 - 3)  
9 (12 - 3)  
2 (1/2 of 4)  
17 (19 - 2)  
7 (9 - 2)



In some typing textbooks, a cumulative word count (from date through initials) is at the right of lines in unarranged business letters. Words in the body are in parentheses at the end of the letter. At the left, the word-count column shows 17 words in line 1, 33 words in lines 1 + 2, and so on. The table runs from word 56 to word \_\_\_\_\_. It contains \_\_\_\_\_ - 56 = \_\_\_\_\_ words. Including the table, the body contains \_\_\_\_\_ words. Without the table, the body contains \_\_\_\_\_ words.

83  
83 (- 56) = 27  
137  
110 (137 - 27)

12-27

The body of the letter in the preceding frame, minus its table, contains 110 words. For it, a moving date would ordinarily be on line \_\_\_\_; a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_ line spaces to the inside address. But because of the 4-line table the letter must be raised by \_\_\_\_ lines. The result for this letter so far\* is a moving date on line \_\_\_\_; a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_ lines down to the inside address.

\*Not yet counting extra paragraphs

19 (22 - 3)  
9 (12 - 3)  
2 (½ of 4)  
17 (19 - 2)  
7 (9 - 2)

12-28

~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 Bard        10 years  
 Glenn       6 months  
 Donato      12 years  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~ (99)

Some typing textbooks do not show a line-by-line word count, but only words in the body (in parentheses at the end of the letter).

In such books, just count the number of dictionary words in the table and subtract that number from total words in the body.

The table at the left has \_\_\_\_ words.

The body of the letter contains \_\_\_\_ words. Minus the table, the body contains \_\_\_\_ words.

9  
99  
90 (99 - 9)

12-29

The body of the letter in the preceding frame, minus its table, contains 90 words. For it, a moving date would ordinarily be on line \_\_\_\_; a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_ line spaces to the inside address. However, for the 3-line table, the letter must be raised by \_\_\_\_ line(s). The result for this letter so far\* is a moving date on line \_\_\_\_; a fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_ lines down to the inside address.

\*Not yet counting extra paragraphs

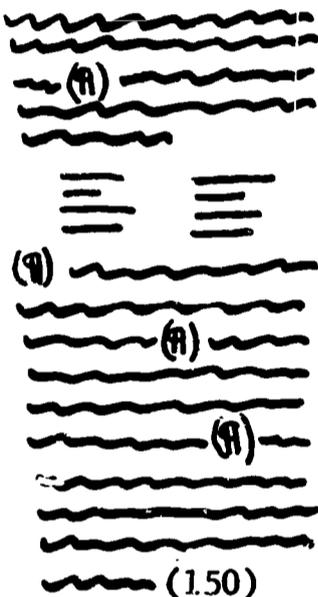
- 20 (22 - 2)
- 10 (12 - 2)
- 1 (1/2 of 3)
- 19 (20 - 1)
- 9 (10 - 1)

12-30

A table in a letter counts as a paragraph because it is preceded and followed by a blank line. The letter of Frame 12-23 (refer to it) should therefore be considered to contain \_\_\_\_ paragraphs.

4

12-31



In unarranged business letters in typing textbooks, new paragraphs (after the first one, which is UNMARKED) are shown as: (Par.) OR the par. sign is used (P).

The letter sketched at the left contains \_\_\_\_ pars., or \_\_\_\_ EXTRA pars. The table contains \_\_\_\_ lines. The letter has a total of \_\_\_\_ EXTRA lines.

The table contains 15 words (to be subtracted from words in the body). Considering extra lines in the letter at the left, a moving date would be on line \_\_\_\_\_. A fixed date (on line \_\_\_\_\_) would be followed by \_\_\_\_ line spaces.

6 (2 before the table + 1 for the table + 3 after the table)

4  
4  
8

14 [Date on line 18 for 135 words. For 8 extra lines raise the date by 4 lines (1/2 of 8); 18 - 4 = 14.]

14

4 [For 135 words in body (150 - 15), space down 8 after date. See explanation above for extra lines.]

12-32-

In business letters, table rows are sometimes single spaced, sometimes double spaced. Sometimes there is a table title, sometimes not. Sometimes there are column headings, sometimes not. In any case, be careful to count the actual number of vertical lines needed for the table, including blank lines, if any, within the table. A single-spaced table with 4 rows and 1-line column headings (but no title) contains a total of \_\_\_\_ lines. If the rows were double-spaced, the table would contain a total of \_\_\_\_ lines.

- 6 (4 rows + column heads + blank line after CHs)
- 9 (same as above + 3 blank lines separating the 4 rows of the table)

In some letter styles, paragraphs are blocked. In other styles, paragraphs are indented (usually 5 spaces). You can tell from the illustration in Frame 12-23 (refer to it) that when a letter contains a table, the letter will look more attractive if the paragraphs are \_\_\_\_\_.

(blocked/indented)

blocked

Now a little TEST.

-----

~~~~~ (A) ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~

Pads	20	dozen
Paper	100	reams
Clips	75	boxes

(A) ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~ (A) ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~  
 ~~~~~ (107)

1. The letter at the left contains \_\_\_\_\_ EXTRA paragraphs.
2. The table contains about \_\_\_\_\_ words and uses \_\_\_\_\_ lines.
3. A moving date for the letter would be on line no. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A fixed date would be on line no. \_\_\_\_\_ and would be followed by \_\_\_\_\_ line spaces.

[Test continued in the next frame]

TEST continued.

1. 3
2. 9
3. 3
3. 17 [Line 20 for 98 words (107 - 9), minus 1/2 of 6 lines (3 extra pars. and 3-line table)]
4. 14
- 7 [Down 10 for 98 words (107 - 9), minus 1/2 of 6 lines (3 extra pars. and 3-line table)]

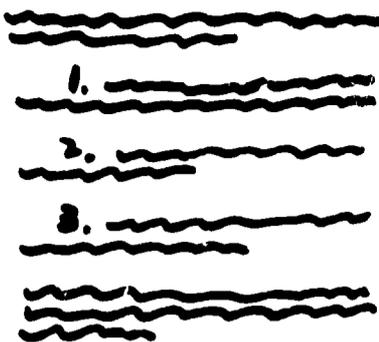
-----

~~~~~ 10  
 ~~~~~ (A) ~~~~~ 21  
 ~~~~~ 32  
 ~~~~~ 41  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 46  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 52  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 58  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 63  
 (A) ~~~~~ 74  
 ~~~~~ 84  
 ~~~~~ (A) ~~~~~ 95  
 ~~~~~ 107  
 ~~~~~ (A) ~~~~~ 117  
 ~~~~~ 128  
 ~~~~~ (116) 134

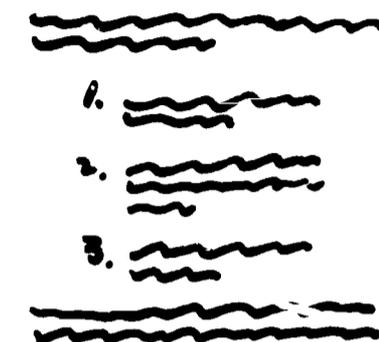
- Assume double spacing for the table.
5. The table contains \_\_\_\_\_ words.
  6. The body of the letter (without the table) contains \_\_\_\_\_ words.
  7. The letter has \_\_\_\_\_ extra lines.
  8. A moving date is on line \_\_\_\_\_.
  9. After a fixed date, space down \_\_\_\_\_ lines.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

- 5. 22 (63 - 41)
- 6. 94 (116 - 22)
- 7. 11 (4 extra pars. + 7 lines in the double-spaced table)
- 8. 15 (Line 20 for 94 words minus 1/2 of 11 extra lines = 20 - 5 = 15.)
- 9. 5 (Down 10 for 94 words minus 1/2 of 11 extra lines = 10 - 5 = 5.)



Some letters include numbered pars. In one style, such paragraphs are indented from both letter margins, as in the \_\_\_\_\_ example. (upper/lower)



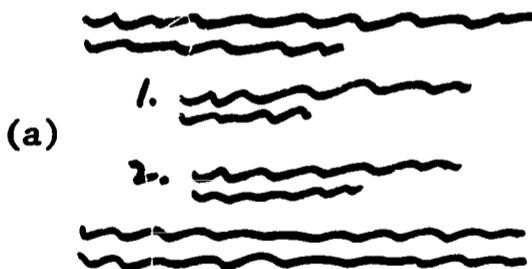
In another style, only the first line of each numbered par. is indented--at the left only; otherwise, the lines use the letter margins, as in the \_\_\_\_\_ sketch. (upper/lower)

In such letters, the unnumbered pars. (as in both sketches) should be \_\_\_\_\_ (indented/blocked)

- lower
- upper
- blocked

In the preceding frame (refer to it), the numbered pars. "stand out" more, are more attractive, in the \_\_\_\_\_ sketch. (upper/lower)

Whichever of the two ways you choose, remember that every paragraph, numbered or not, is followed by a blank line. The sketches in the preceding frame (refer to it) show that each letter has \_\_\_\_\_ paragraphs--or \_\_\_\_\_ extra paragraphs. Which of the two versions below is correct (a or b)? \_\_\_\_\_

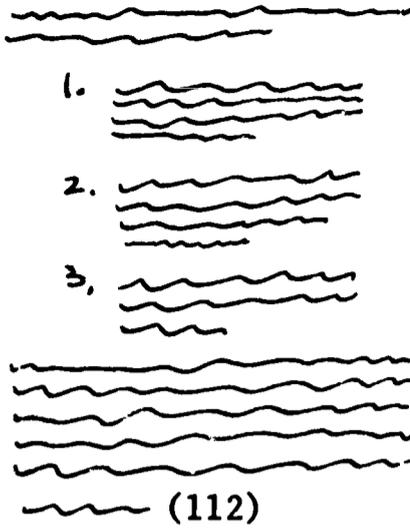


- lower
- 5
- 3
- a (The lines in numbered pars. that are indented on both sides are blocked at the left under the first word, not under the paragraph number.)

Whether or not you indent numbered paragraphs from both letter margins, the UNnumbered paragraphs should be \_\_\_\_\_. If you do indent numbered paragraphs (indented/blocked) from both letter margins, you have to keep an eye on the typing to make sure that you stop each line about 5 spaces short of the \_\_\_\_\_ margin. At the left, you could either set a tab stop for the beginning of each line or you could temporarily reset the \_\_\_\_\_.

blocked  
right  
left margin

In deciding on the vertical placement of a letter with numbered paragraphs, usually all you have to consider (besides words in the body) is the total number of paragraphs.



But if there are many numbered pars. or long ones (indented from both sides), raise the letter by 1 line for each TEN lines (or 50 words) in the numbered pars. Otherwise, the letter might be too           .  
(high/low)

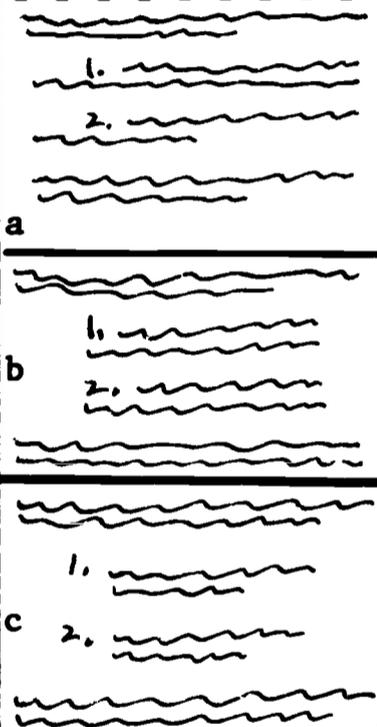
For the letter at the left, a moving date would be on line \_\_\_\_\_. A fixed date would be followed by \_\_\_\_\_ line spaces.

Now a little TEST

low

17 [Line 19 (for 112-word body) minus 2, which is 1/2 of 3 extra para. + 1 line for 11 lines of numbered pars.]

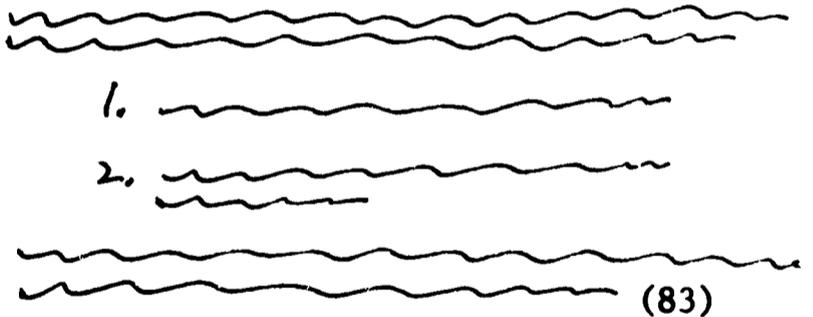
7 [Down 9 (for 112-word body) minus 2, which is 1/2 of 3 extra para. + 1 line for 11 lines of numbered pars.]



1. At the left, example            is preferred; example            is wrong.

(a/b/c/)  
(a/b/c)

2. For the letter below, a moving date is on line \_\_\_\_\_; after a fixed date (on line \_\_\_\_\_), space down \_\_\_\_\_ line(s).



c

b

19 (Line 20 for 83 words minus 1 for 2 extra para.)

14

9 (Down 10 for 83 words minus 1 for 2 extra para.)

When you complete this section, you should be able to:

Estimate the number of words in a piece of copy

Select appropriate side margins

Determine how many typed lines will be needed

Center the work vertically on the page

13-0

Section 13

Estimation of Copy Length and Centering of Estimated Materials

45 Frames

13-1

Most of the materials in typewriting textbooks are accompanied by a word count. The word count makes it easy to score the work for speed and it helps the student to make decisions about arranging work on the page when arrangement depends on the number of words or lines in the copy. But in real life do you suppose an employer would instruct his typist to "leave 8 spaces between columns" in some table or "To type this 137-word letter for me"? \_\_\_\_\_ If an employed typist is given a letter to type, do you suppose she counts all of its words, one by one? \_\_\_\_\_

13-2

no  
no

Another important difference between typewriting textbooks and the materials from which an employed typist works is that, on the job, nearly half of the materials are in longhand. Sometimes that longhand might be quite clear; sometimes it might be <sup>difficult</sup> ~~hard~~ to read, with corrections and crossings out. In typewriting textbooks, nearly everything is perfectly printed. About how much of on-the-job typing is from longhand? \_\_\_\_\_

(nearly) half

13-3

The employed typist does not count words one by one. It takes too much time and is not necessary. Instead, he makes an estimate or guess. How? By counting the number of dictionary words on each of 3 or 4 lines selected AT RANDOM,\* taking an average of those counts, and multiplying that average by the number of lines. Consider this example:

Line 1 of this frame contains 11 words. Line 4 has 12 words; line 5 has \_\_\_\_ words. The total for those 3 lines is \_\_\_\_\_. Dividing that total by 3 results in an average (to the nearest whole word) of \_\_\_\_\_ words per line. This frame (without the footnote) has 12 lines. Total words in those 12 lines can be estimated as  $12 \times \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  words.

\*At random means: not according to any fixed plan or pattern--not in some regular way or order.

9  
32  
11  
(12 x) 11 = 132

13-4

The first 12 lines of the preceding frame were estimated to contain 132 words. Actually (counting each blank to be filled in as 1 word\*), the 12 lines contain 131 words.

The difference is only \_\_\_\_ word(s). If a business letter of 131 words were estimated to contain 132 words, would that make any difference in the horizontal or vertical margins you would use? \_\_\_\_ As compared to counting words one by one, estimating is accurate enough, and it is

\_\_\_\_\_.  
(more exact/faster)

\*In these frames, count each blank to be filled in as one word--except when more than one word is required in the blank.

1  
no  
faster

13-5

Remember that at random means: not in any regular way. So don't count the first 3 or 4 lines or the last 3 or 4 lines. Instead, skip around. In a 15-line set, you might count lines 1, 4, 11, and 13. Or you might count lines 2, 8, and 14. Jot down your count for each line, like this: ↴

From the column of numbers at the right, you should be able to tell at a glance (without doing any arithmetic) that the average number of words per line is \_\_\_\_.

11  
10  
9  
10

10

13-6

If you cannot see at a glance what the average of a set of numbers is, add them up and divide the sum by the number of numbers. Example: the average of 8, 11, 12, 10 is:

The three typed lines just above this one contain  
\_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_ + \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ words. Dividing that  
total by 3 results (to the nearest whole word) in  
\_\_\_\_.

↓  
8  
11  
12  
10  
4/41  
10

14

12

11

37

12 (37 ÷ 3)

13-7

If you count any three or four lines of the longhand in Frame 13-2, you will see that the average number of words per line is \_\_\_\_\_. Suppose you had to estimate total words in that frame (counting the first typed line as if it had been in longhand). Since total words = number of lines times average number of words per line, the result is:  
\_\_\_\_ x \_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_ words.

7

10 x 7 = 70

Note. The frame actually contains 67 words.

13-8

If a line ends with a divided word, count it as a whole word if most of the word is on that line. Otherwise, do not count it. In line 4 of Frame 13-1 (refer to it), would you count the last (divided) word as a full word? \_\_\_\_\_  
How about the last (divided) word in line 9 of that frame? \_\_\_\_\_  
Would you count it as a full word? \_\_\_\_\_  
If the larger part of a divided word begins a line, count it as a full word. In Frame 13-1 (refer to it), line 2 should be counted as containing \_\_\_\_ words. In Frame 13-30 (refer to it), line 4 contains \_\_\_\_ words.

yes

no

12 (panied counts as a word)

8 (ment does not count as a word)

13-9

When you count lines, do not count a fraction of a line as a full line. For example, Frame 13-7 (refer to it) contains          lines. The last line contains (count one by one)          words. With an average of 11 words per full line in that frame, total words should be estimated as 6 x 11 plus the words on the last line. The total is          words.

6½

6

72 (6 x 11, plus 6)

Note. The frame actually contains 72 words.

13-10

In Frame 13-8 (refer to it), line 6 (which ends the first paragraph) is not a full one. Line 10 (which ends the second paragraph) is also not full. On lines that are not full (or almost full), count the words one by one and add them to your count for full lines.

The 8 full lines in Frame 13-8 average 12 words per line. Total words in that frame, including the words on the two partial lines, should be estimated as         .

113

(8 x 12 = 96  
Line 6 = 9  
Line 10 = 8  
Total = 113)

Note. The actual total is 113.

13-11

Some lines might contain many short words; other lines might contain longer words. That is why it is necessary to count several lines (three or four) in order to estimate average words per line. For example, in Frame 13-1 (refer to it), line 3 contains          words. But line 4 contains          words. You should therefore count an additional two lines in that frame to determine that the average line has          words and to estimate total words in that frame as                         .  
(how many?)



11  
200 (8 x 25)  
100 ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of 200)

13-15

Estimation of length of copy is a necessity for the personal typist, as well as for the employed one. You might draft in longhand an important personal letter or a term paper or report for a high school or college course--before typing it. Suppose you were instructed to write a report of at least 1,500 words. If you draft in longhand, writing 10 words per line on a 30-line ruled page, you would know that each full longhand page contains \_\_\_\_ words. So, for at least 1,500 words, you would have to write at least \_\_\_\_ pages.

300 (10 x 30)  
5 (1,500 ÷ 300)

13-16

When you know how many words per line typically appear in your (or your employer's) longhand, you should  $\frac{\quad}{(a/b)}$ .

- a. Continue to count 3 or 4 lines and take an average for each piece of work.
- b. Just multiply the number of lines (or pages) by the number of words that you have found from past experience to be typical per line (or per page).

b

13-17

The longhand in Frame 13-2 averages 7 words per line. The typed lines in these frames often average about 11 words per line. As compared to typing, longhand uses  $\frac{\quad}{(less/more)}$  space.

If 20 lines of longhand are typed, the number of typed lines will be  $\frac{\quad}{(fewer/about\ the\ same/greater)}$  than the number of longhand lines.

more  
fewer

13-18

For business letters, you would apply the usual placement rules (about side margins and date line) to your estimate of the number of words in the body of the letter.\*

If you estimate the body of some letter to contain 120 words, in your size of type you would set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. A letter of up to 100 words would use side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. For more than 200 words, set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

\*If you use PICA type, for the remainder of this section of the program assume RM set at the end of the writing line, not 3 spaces past it. Example: for short PICA letters, margins should be stated as 20-65, not 20-68.

| <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|--------------|-------------|
| 20-85        | 15-70       |
| 25-80        | 20-65       |
| 15-90        | 10-75       |

13-19

Now a little TEST.

1. Frame 13-15 (refer to it) contains \_\_\_\_ full lines and averages \_\_\_\_ words per full line. Including the final partial line, the frame should be estimated to contain a total of \_\_\_\_ words.
2. Frame 13-12 (refer to it) contains \_\_\_\_ full lines and averages \_\_\_\_ words per full line. All together, the frame should be estimated to contain \_\_\_\_ words.
3. If Frame 13-12 were to be centered on a page (using letter margins), the side margins in your size of type should be set at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

13-20

All work should be attractively arranged (centered) on the page. For some kinds of work (but not in business letters), after you have estimated total words, you must:

1. 9  
11  
101 [(9 x 11) + 2]  
Note. Actual total = 100.
2. 6  
8  
52 [6 x 8 = 48  
last line =  $\frac{4}{52}$ ]  
Note. Actual total = 50.
3. (Elite) 25 - 80  
(Pica) 20 - 65

1. Select appropriate side margins. The more words to be typed, the \_\_\_\_\_ the side margins and the \_\_\_\_\_ the WL (writing line).  
(narrower/wider)  
(shorter/longer)
2. Then determine the number of words that can be typed per line, using those side margins. The longer the WL, the \_\_\_\_\_ words can be typed per line.  
(fewer/more)

- 1. narrower longer
- 2. more

13-21

When you have selected side margins and know how many words of typing will fit, on the average, on each typed line, you next--

- 3. Determine how many lines of typing will be required. For example, if your side margins permit 10 words per line and you have 150 words to be typed, you know that the work will require \_\_\_\_ lines of typing.
- 4. Then, to determine vertical margins, subtract the lines used from the total available on the page and divide the difference by \_\_\_\_\_. For example, to center vertically 15 single-spaced lines of typing on a half sheet, in the top margin there would be \_\_\_\_\_ blank lines, and you would start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3. 15 (150 ÷ 10)
- 4. 2  
9 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 15)]  
10

13-22

Here, in order, are the questions to be answered in order to center material on the page:

- 1. How many words are to be typed?
- 2. What side margins should be used?
- 3. With those margins, how many words fit on a line?
- 4. How many lines of typing will be required?
- 5. How many lines are left for vertical margins?

Let's start with Step 2. Suppose you had to type an announcement containing only ordinary paragraph material for posting on a school or office bulletin board. Use the side margins that apply to business letters. If you estimate 150 words in the announcement, in your size of type you would set LM at \_\_\_\_\_ and RM at \_\_\_\_\_.

- (elite) 20 - 85
- (pica) 15 - 70

13-23

The next question is: How many words fit per line? The answer is based on the fact that the average word in the English language requires  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 typewriter strokes. To take that into account in determining typed words per line, divide the number of spaces in the WL by 5; then subtract 1.

With a WL of 60 spaces,  $60 \div 5 = 12$ , and  $12 - 1 = 11$ . With a 60-space writing line, you will be able to type, on the average, \_\_\_\_\_ words per line.

With elite side margins at 20-85, the WL is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long, and you can type an average of \_\_\_\_\_ words per line.

With pica side margins at 15-70, the WL is \_\_\_\_\_ spaces long, and you can type an average of \_\_\_\_\_ words per line.

13-24

- 11
- 65 (85 minus 20)
- 12 [(65 ÷ 5) - 1]
- 55 (70 minus 15)
- 10 [(55 ÷ 5) - 1]

For the 150-word announcement referred to in Frame 13-22, in your size of type you would set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_, resulting in a WL of \_\_\_\_ spaces. With that WL you will average \_\_\_\_ words per line. The 150 words of typing will therefore require \_\_\_\_ typed lines.\*

\*A fraction of a line takes the same vertical space as a full line. So count any final fraction of a line as a full line.

13-25

Elite

- 20 - 85
- 65
- 12 [(65 ÷ 5) - 1]
- 13 (150 ÷ 12)

Once you know how many lines of typing will be used, vertical centering is done in the usual way. To find the distance from the top for the first line of typing, just subtract lines used from the total available on the page, divide the difference by 2, and add 1.

Pica

- 15 - 70
- 55
- 10 [(55 ÷ 5) - 1]
- 15 (150 ÷ 10)

To center vertically 13 single-spaced lines on a half sheet, start on line \_\_\_\_\_. To center 10 double-spaced lines on a full sheet (requiring twice the number of typed lines, minus 1), start on line \_\_\_\_\_.

13-26

- 11 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 13), + 1]
- 24 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (66 - 19), + 1]

Remember that the side margins used for business letters of various lengths are also used when any ordinary paragraph material has to be centered on the page. MEMORIZE the fact that for up to 100 words of material you should set side margins (in your size of type) at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_, giving you \_\_\_\_ words per line. For 101-200 words, set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_ words per line. For more than 200 words, set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_, in which you can fit \_\_\_\_ words per line.

| <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|--------------|-------------|
| 25-80        | 20-65       |
| 10           | 8           |
| 20-85        | 15-70       |
| 12           | 10          |
| 15-90        | 10-75       |
| 14           | 12          |

13-27

Suppose you decide to use side margins that will make some piece of work take 20 lines. You must make certain to type full lines, to type all the way out to your right margin on each line (except for a partial final line). Otherwise, your work will be unattractive because your right margin is ragged and uneven. Also--because you did not type full lines--the work will actually take \_\_\_\_\_ than 20 lines and will be too \_\_\_\_\_ on the page.

(less/more)  
(low/high)

more  
low

13-28

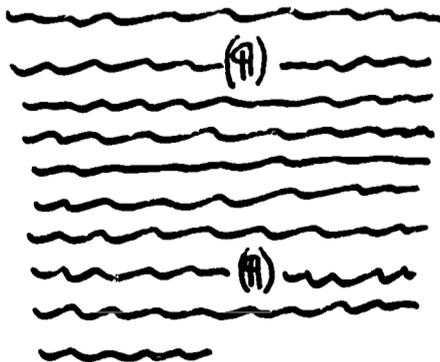
Remember that dividing total words by average number of words per line results in number of typed lines. You must also take into account any blank lines that might be required (for example, between single-spaced paragraphs or after a heading that precedes the paragraphs). In fact, if there is a heading, count it as a separate line, apart from the lines required for typing the paragraphs.

Assume 15 single-spaced lines in 3 paragraphs, plus a 1-line heading to be followed by 1 blank line. Total lines = \_\_\_\_\_. If centered vertically on a ½-sheet, start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.

13-29

19  
15 typed lines  
2 blank lines between  
3 pars.  
1 heading line  
1 blank line after the  
heading  
19  
8 [½ of (33 - 19), + 1]

Vacation Policy



At the left is a sketch of an announcement for posting on an office bulletin board. It has \_\_\_\_\_ paragraphs.

If these paragraphs contain an estimated 95 words, set side margins at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

You will get \_\_\_\_\_ words per line and use, for the paragraphs alone, \_\_\_\_\_ TYPED lines.

Using single spacing (but double spacing after the heading and between paragraphs), the announcement will use a total of \_\_\_\_\_ lines. If centered on a half-sheet it should start on line \_\_\_\_\_.

3

| <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|--------------|-------------|
| 25-80        | 20-65       |
| 10           | 8           |
| 10           | 12          |
| 14*          | 16*         |
| 10           | 9           |

\*Typed lines plus 4--(CH + blank line after CH + 2 blank lines between 3 pars.)

If the announcement of the preceding frame had 120 words, you would set side margins at \_\_\_ and \_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_ words per typed line. The paragraphs in the announcement would require \_\_\_ typed lines. Using double spacing (but a triple space after the heading), on a full sheet you would type the heading on line \_\_\_.

By now you may have recognized that for short, medium, and long materials (to 100, 101-200, 200+ words), with elite margins you average 10, 12, and \_\_\_ words per typed line. With pica margins you average 8, 10, and \_\_\_ words per typed line. You can save a little time if you \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. Memorize those figures
- b. Figure them out each time

(a/b)

| <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|--------------|-------------|
| 20-85        | 15-70       |
| 12           | 10          |
| 10           | 12          |
| 23*          | 21**        |
| 14           | 12          |

\*10 lines in DS use 19 lines + CH + 2 lines after CH = 22 lines. 1/2 of (66 - 22), + 1 = 23.

\*\*12 lines in DS use 23 lines + CH + 2 lines after CH = 26 lines. 1/2 of (66 - 26), + 1 = 21.

a

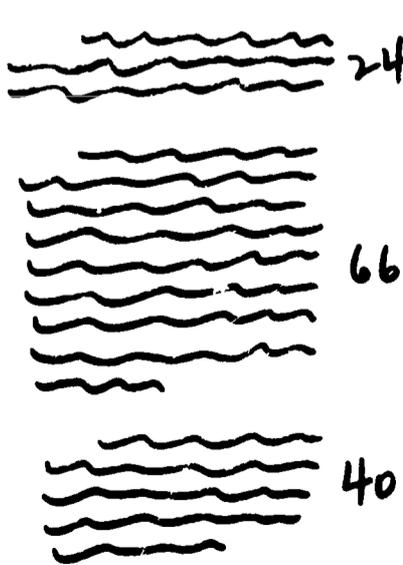
Often, the last line in a paragraph is not a full one. If you do not take that into account, your estimate of typed lines might be too low, and your work could turn out to be too \_\_\_\_\_ on the page. You can be more exact if you \_\_\_\_\_ (low/high)

- 1. Estimate words paragraph by paragraph.
- 2. Select side margins based on the total for all pars.
- 3. Figure out number of typed lines par. by par.; then total for all pars.

The preceding steps take into account that--using side margins that allow 10 typed words per line--a paragraph that contains an estimated 24 words will use (in single spacing) \_\_\_ lines of depth on the page.

low

3 (A fraction of a line of typing takes a full line of depth on the page.)



The estimates at the left show 24 words in par. 1, 66 words in par. 2, and 40 words in par. 3.

For the total of \_\_\_ words:

- 1. Set side margins at \_\_\_ and \_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_ words per line.
- 2. Par. 1 will require \_\_\_ lines; par. 2 will use \_\_\_ lines; par. 3 will use \_\_\_ lines.
- 3. Using double spacing, the 3 pars. will use a total of \_\_\_ lines on the page.

130

|    | <u>Elite</u>   | <u>Pica</u> |
|----|----------------|-------------|
| 1. | 20-85          | 15-70       |
|    | 12             | 10          |
| 2. | 2              | 3           |
|    | 6              | 7           |
|    | 4              | 4           |
| 3. | 23*            | 27**        |
|    | *(2 x 12) - 1  |             |
|    | **(2 x 14) - 1 |             |

If the paragraphs in the preceding frame had not been estimated one by one, your estimate of total typed lines would have been 1 line less. This is too small a difference to care about. But if there were many paragraphs, quite a large difference can result.

With a 14-word WL, 224 words would require 16 lines. But if the 6 pars. contained 23, 36, 44, 58, 33, and 30 words (total = 224), the number of typed lines needed for each par., in turn, would be: \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_, for a total of \_\_\_\_ typed lines. Assuming double spacing and centering on a full sheet, for 16 typed lines you would start on line \_\_\_\_\_. But when you estimate par. by par., the starting line is line no. \_\_\_\_\_.

2  
3  
4  
5  
3  
3  
3  
20

18 (16 double spaced lines use 31 lines; and 1/2 of (66 - 31), + 1 = 18.)  
14 (20 double spaced lines use 39 lines; and 1/2 of (66 - 39), + 1 = 14.)

If the materials use only 2 or 3 paragraphs, don't bother to estimate typed lines paragraph by paragraph. But if there are 4 or more paragraphs, it pays to estimate one by one.

In Frame 13-31 (refer to it), there are \_\_\_\_ numbered paragraphs and \_\_\_\_ other paragraphs, for a total of \_\_\_\_ paragraphs. In that frame, estimating typed lines paragraph by paragraph \_\_\_\_\_ be desirable.  
(would/would not)

3  
2  
5  
would

Here are the steps in estimating copy length. Read them several times until you have them firmly in mind.

1. Count the number of dictionary words on each of \_\_\_\_\_ full lines.
2. Get the average words per line, multiply by the number of full lines, and add the words on incomplete lines. The result is an estimate of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Select side margins based on total words. Use the same margins that are used for \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Determine typed words per line. Example: With a WL of 55 spaces, you get \_\_\_\_ typed words per line.
5. To determine total typed lines, divide the result of Step \_\_\_\_\_ by the result of Step \_\_\_\_\_.

1. 3 or 4
2. total words
3. business letters
4.  $10 [(55 \div 5) - 1]$
5. 2 (by) 4

The 5 steps listed in the preceding frame apply to materials that have only a few paragraphs. If there are more than a few paragraphs (4 or more), you should estimate words  $\frac{\quad}{(a/b)}$ . Then estimate typed lines  $\frac{\quad}{(a/b)}$ .

- a. For the paragraphs together
- b. Paragraph by paragraph

b  
b

Now a little TEST. -----

1. In Frame 13-31 (refer to it) the full lines average 11 words per line, and the frame contains \_\_\_\_ paragraphs.
2. On the basis of 11 words per full line, the first par. should be estimated to contain \_\_\_\_ words. The numbered pars. contain, in turn, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_ words. The last par. contains an estimated \_\_\_\_ words. The frame totals an estimated \_\_\_\_ words. Therefore, in your size of type set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_.
3. With those side margins you can type \_\_\_\_ words per line.

(Test continued in the next frame.)

1. 5
2. 44 (4 x 11)  
6  
11  
15  
 $\frac{40}{116} [(3 \times 11) + 7]$   
(elite) 20-85  
(pica) 15-70
3. (elite) 12  
(pica) 10

\*The actual total is 118.

Test continued. -----

(Check the model answers to Frame 13-37 before continuing.)

4. The number of typed lines required for each of the five pars. is, in turn, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_-- for a total of \_\_\_\_ typed lines.
5. Assuming a 1-line heading (followed by a blank line) and double spacing between single-spaced pars., the frame uses a total of \_\_\_\_ lines.
6. If centered on a full sheet, type the heading on line \_\_\_\_.

(Test continued in the next frame.)

|    | <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|----|--------------|-------------|
| 4. | 4            | 5           |
|    | 1            | 1           |
|    | 1            | 2           |
|    | 2            | 2           |
|    | <u>4</u>     | <u>4</u>    |
|    | 12           | 14          |
| 5. | 18*          | 20*         |
| 6. | 25           | 24          |

\* CH + blank line + 4 blank lines separating 5 pars. = 6 more lines; 12 + 6 = 18 (elite) and 14 + 6 = 20 (pica)

TEST continued. -----

13-39

Apply to Frame 13-32 (ignoring the sketch at the left) the steps you just used for Frame 13-31.

7. The frame averages \_\_\_\_\_ words per full line and contains \_\_\_\_\_ full lines. Including partial lines, the frame totals \_\_\_\_\_ words. Side margins set at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ result in \_\_\_\_\_ words per full typed line.
8. Typed lines for the pars., in turn, are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_, for a total of \_\_\_\_\_ typed lines.
9. Centered on a ½-sheet (and using the vertical spacing shown in the frame), start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

7. 7  
8  
74 [(7 x 8) + 6 + 6 + 4 + 2]

Note. Actual total is 78.

| <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u> |
|--------------|-------------|
| 25-80        | 20-65       |
| 10           | 8           |

8. (Elite) 2 + 1 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 9  
(Pica) 3 + 1 + 2 + 3 + 2 = 11
9. (Elite) 11  
(Pica) 10

- 21 (and) 81  
11 [(60 ÷ 5) - 1]

Business-letter margins have been recommended for use in this section of the program because persons who type many business letters quickly learn those margins. But for ordinary paragraph materials (not business letters) that have to be attractively centered on the page, you might prefer margins that give you writing lines of 50 or 60 or 70 spaces (instead of 45, 55, 65, or 75). In fact, 60 is always usable instead of 55 and 65 (but not instead of 45 or 75)--in both pica and elite type.

For a 60-space WL set the side margins 30 spaces on each side of center: for elite type set them at 51 - 30 and at 51 + 30; that is, at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Remember, however, that a 60-space WL gives you \_\_\_\_\_ typed words per line.

Here is an alternative to using business-letter margins when paragraph materials are to be attractively centered on the page. In both pica AND elite type-- use a 50-space WL for up to 100 words. In your size of type, set margins at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_\_ typed words per line.  
For 101 to 200 words, use a 60-space WL. Set side margins in your size of type at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_\_\_ typed words per line.\*

\*Materials of more than 200 words are discussed in the next frame.

13-40

13-41

13-42

Elite

26 and 76 (51 - 25 and 51 + 25)  
 9 (50 ÷ 5, - 1)  
 21 and 81 (51 - 30 and 51 + 30)  
 11 (60 ÷ 5, - 1)

Pica

17 and 67 (42 - 25 and 42 + 25)  
 9 (50 ÷ 5, - 1)  
 12 and 72 (42 - 30 and 42 + 30)  
 11 (60 ÷ 5, - 1)

Because side margins should not be less than 1 inch on each side, you should not use more than a 65-space line in pica type. Therefore, in pica type use a WL of not more than 60 or 65 spaces for materials of more than \_\_\_ words. In elite type, on the other hand, for more than 200 words use a 70-space WL. Set elite side margins at \_\_\_ and \_\_\_, resulting in \_\_\_ typed words per line.

13-43

200  
 16 and 86 (51 - 35 and 51 + 35)  
 13 (70 ÷ 5, - 1)

To center ordinary paragraph materials, you can choose between using business-letter margins or a round-number WL (50, 60, 70 spaces). In your size of type--

1. For up to 100 words, use EITHER letter margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_ OR (with WL = \_\_\_) margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_.
2. For 101-200 words, use EITHER letter margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_ OR (with WL = \_\_\_) margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_.
3. For more than 200 words, use EITHER letter margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_ OR (with WL = \_\_\_) margins of \_\_\_ and \_\_\_.
4. A WL of more than 65 is not permitted in \_\_\_\_\_ type. (elite/pica)

13-44

|       | <u>Elite</u> | <u>Pica</u>       |
|-------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1.    | 25-80<br>50  | 20-65<br>50       |
|       | 26-76        | 17-67             |
| 2.    | 20-85<br>60  | 15-70<br>60       |
|       | 21-81        | 12-72             |
| 3.    | 15-90<br>70  | 10-75<br>60 or 65 |
|       | 16-86        | 12-72 or 10-75    |
| <hr/> |              |                   |
| 4.    | pica         |                   |

If you use a round-number WL for materials of 124 words, you would set side margins (in your size of type) at \_\_\_ and \_\_\_. With those margins, each full typed line would average \_\_\_ words. The 124 words would require \_\_\_ typed lines. Centered in double spacing on a full sheet, you would start to type on line \_\_\_.

(elite) 21 and 81

(pica) 12 and 72

11

12

22

[12 lines in DS use 23 lines, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  of (66 - 23), + 1 = 22.]

1. 70 [(5 x 11) + 7 + 7 + 1]

Note. Actual total is 68.

2. 50

(Elite) 26 - 76

(Pica) 17 - 67

9 [(50 ÷ 5) - 1]

3. 4, 4, and 2 (total = 10)

19 [(2 x 10) - 1]

8 [ $\frac{1}{2}$  of (33 - 19), + 1]

Now a little TEST.

1. The 3 numbered pars. of Frame 13-38 (refer to it) average 11 words per full line and contain an estimated total, including partial lines, of \_\_\_\_ words.
2. For those 3 pars. use a round-number WL of \_\_\_\_ spaces and set side margins at \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. On each full typed line you would average \_\_\_\_ words.
3. The 3 pars. would require, in turn, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_ typed lines. Double spaced on a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -sheet, you would use a total of \_\_\_\_ lines and start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_.

4

When you complete this section, you should know:

What horizontal and vertical margins to set for bound and unbound reports

Where to number pages

How to type headings in a report

How to type footnotes in a report

14-0

Section 14  
Manuscript and Report Typing

40 Frames

14-1

A manuscript (abbreviated ms., plural is mss.) or a report is always typed in double spacing, using margins of 1 inch all around\* (left, right, top, bottom). For a 1" margin in your size of type, the left margin would be set at \_\_\_\_ and the RM at \_\_\_\_\_. Since, in both pica and elite type, 6 single-spaced lines make 1 inch, to have a top margin of exactly 1 inch the first line of typing on each page would be on line \_\_\_\_\_.

\*Unless the ms. is bound--at the left side or at the top.

14-2

Nearly always, mss. or reports are typed on 8½" x 11" paper. With 6 vertical lines to an inch, standard-size paper is \_\_\_\_\_ lines long. To have a bottom margin of exactly 1 inch, the last line of typing should be on line no. \_\_\_\_\_.

(elite) 12 (and) 90

(pica) 10 (and) 75

7

66  
60 (Lines 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66 are the 6 blank lines in the bottom margin.)

In double-spaced typing, if you start each page on line 7 you will type on odd-numbered lines (7, 9, 11, and so on). If so, will you type on line 60? \_\_\_\_ Therefore, make the top margin a little more than 1 inch. Start each page 1 line lower, on line \_\_\_\_ . Then, in double-spaced typing on even-numbered lines (8, 10, 12, and so on) you can end on line 60, and the margin will be exactly 1 inch at the

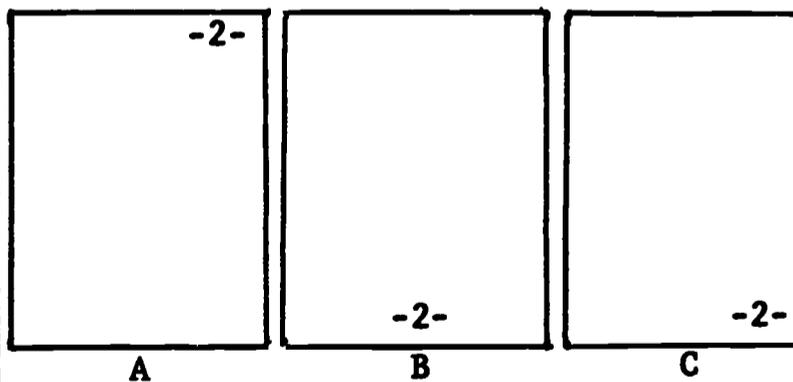
\_\_\_\_\_  
(top/bottom)

no (60 is not an odd number)  
8  
bottom

In a printed book every page (except the first and last one in each chapter) starts the same distance from the top of the page and ends the same distance from the bottom of the page. A typed ms. or report should aim at the same evenness. So start each page on line \_\_\_\_ and end each page on line \_\_\_\_ . If you do that, the number of double-spaced lines on each page will equal \_\_\_\_.\*

\*Arithmetic Hint. From line 8 through line 60 inclusive is 53 lines. You type on every other line, including the first and last lines.

8  
60  
27 (the "larger half" of 53)



Type page numbers in any of the 3 positions shown at the left. Of the 3, the most convenient is: top right, as shown at \_\_\_\_.  
(A/B/C)

Top numbering is a double space above the first line of typing; bottom numbering is a double space below the last line of typing.

For typing that starts on line 8, top numbering would be on line \_\_\_\_ . Bottom numbering would be on line \_\_\_\_ .





1½  
double  
two double spaces  
no

14-12

If a report has a separate cover page or title page,\* there is no need to repeat title and author on page 1 and no need to leave a deeper top margin on the first page. If there is a separate title page, start page 1 on line \_\_\_\_\_. If there is no title repeated on page 1, should its page number be typed at top right? \_\_\_\_\_

\*See any typewriting textbook or style manual for the content and design of a title or cover page for a report.

8  
yes

14-13

It is quite common to enclose longer reports in a binder\* or folder--just as the pages of a book are bound within hard covers. If so, in order not to hide the left edges of the typing, side-bound mss. use a left margin of 1½ or 2 inches (the other margins remain 1 inch). For a 1½-inch LM on your typewriter, set the LM at \_\_\_\_; for a 2-inch LM, set it at \_\_\_\_\_.

\*A report--especially a short one--does not have to be placed in a binder. But a binder keeps the report clean and makes a good impression.

(elite) 18  
(pica) 15  
(elite) 24  
(pica) 20

14-14

Most reports--if they are bound at all--are bound at the left side, requiring a left margin of \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_ inch(es). Legal documents and some types of business reports are bound at the top, requiring a top margin of 1½ or 2 inches (the other margins remain 1 inch). For a 1½-inch top margin, start to type on line \_\_\_\_\_. For a 2-inch top margin, you would start each page on line \_\_\_\_\_. However, if you prefer to type on even-numbered lines, start 1 line higher on the page, on line \_\_\_\_\_.

1½ (or) 2

10

13

12

To avoid typing too far down on the page, as you approach the bottom you should check the number of typed lines.\* In an unbound ms. (typing in double spacing from line 8 to line 60), you can fit \_\_\_\_\_ lines on a page. In a top-bound report using a top margin of 1½ inches, each page starts on line \_\_\_\_\_--so that a page contains \_\_\_\_\_ typed ms. lines. In a report with a top margin of 1 line less than 2 inches, you start on line \_\_\_\_\_ and can fit on each page \_\_\_\_\_ typed lines.

\*Or watch for your light pencil mark made about \_\_\_\_\_ inches from the bottom of the page, at the right edge.

27

10

26

12

25

1½

A bound report uses a wider side (or top) margin on all pages (the other three margins remain 1 inch). Only very long reports (about 100 pages or more) require a 2-inch margin on the bound side or edge. In a side-bound report of less than 100 pages, set LM at \_\_\_\_\_. In a top-bound report of less than 100 pages, start each page on line \_\_\_\_\_. If a report or term paper for a high school or college course is to be bound, it should be \_\_\_\_\_ bound, using (side/top) a margin on the bound side of \_\_\_\_\_ inch(es).

(elite) 18

(pica) 15

10

side

1½

If a high school or college student works hard at a report, he hopes that his instructor has read it carefully--as revealed by comments written in the margins by the instructor. To permit room for comments (even if you do not put your report in a binder), be generous with marginal space. Use a 1½-inch LM--and even a 1½-inch RM, too. But keep the top and bottom margins at 1 inch. For margins of 1½ inches on each side, set the margin stops in your size of type at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

(elite) 18 and 84  
(pica) 15 and 70

14-18

It was pointed out in Section 9g (Frame 83) that the horizontal center of a side-bound ms. page is not the center of the page, but the center of the writing line. For example, with (elite) margins in a side-bound ms. at 18 and 90, the WL (writing line) is  $90 - 18 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  spaces long. Its midpoint is at  $18 + \frac{1}{2}$  of  $(90 - 18)$ , which equals  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . With pica side margins of 15 and 75, the midpoint of the WL is at  $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ . To center horizontally the title of a report or of a section of it, you would start to backspace from the center of the                     .  
(page/WL)

72  
54 (18 + 36)  
45 [15 + 1/2 of (75 - 15)]  
WL

14-19

Now a little TEST. . . . . .  
1. The abbreviation for manuscript is           .  
2. In an UNbound report, set side margins in your size of type at      and     . The first line on each page is typed on line     , and you can type on a full page      double-spaced lines.  
3. In a short side-bound report, make the            margin wider. Set it at      on the scale. (which?)  
4. In a long top-bound report, start each page on line     .  
5. Of the three positions for page numbers, the preferred position is   .

[Test continued in the next frame]

1. ms.  
2. (elite) 12-90  
(pica) 10-75  
8  
27  
3. left  
(elite) 18  
(pica) 15  
4. 12  
5. top right

14-20

TEST continued. . . . . .  
6. In an unbound report, a page number at the top is on line     . After it, you                      space down to the first ms. line. A page number at the bottom is a                      space below the last line of typing.  
7. With a 1 1/2-inch left margin, horizontal centering in a report is done by backspacing from                      on the carriage scale. (what point?)  
8. If the report title is on the first page, that page may be numbered (where?)   .

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

6. 6

double  
double

Especially in a long report, it is very helpful to the reader if the various sections of the report have headings. These headings should show the organization of the report-- in the same way that an outline does.

7. (elite) 54 [18 + 1/2 of (90 - 18)]  
(pica) 45 [15 + 1/2 of (75 - 15)]

The headings for major sections are centered horizontally (using initial caps for important words) and should not be underscored. Triple space before each new centered heading and double space after it. Consider these examples:

8. at the bottom

1. ORGANIZATION OF A REPORT
2. Organization of a Report
3. Organization of a Report

Of the three, the correct centered heading is (1/2/3).

3

The next level of heading (for a subsection within a major section) is a Side Heading. It is typed at the left margin (using initial caps for important words and solid underscoring), preceded by a triple space and followed by a double space, like this:

\_\_\_\_\_  
This is the last line of ms. before a side heading.

← *Triple space*

Side Heading

← *Double space*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Here is the first line of ms. after a side head.

Is the space between words in a side head underscored? \_\_\_\_\_

Does the ms. after a side head begin a new par.? \_\_\_\_\_

yes

yes

The third and final level of heading it is possible to display in a typed ms. is a Paragraph Heading--for subdivisions of a section headed by a side head. Example:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Last line of a paragraph preceding a paragraph heading.

Paragraph Head. A paragraph head is indented like a paragraph, followed by a period (plus two spaces), with ms. continuing on the same line.

A new centered or side head is preceded by triple spacing.

But a paragraph heading is preceded by an ordinary

\_\_\_\_\_ space. A paragraph head \_\_\_\_\_ under-  
scored. (is/is not)

double  
is

Of the three kinds of heads (C = Centered, S = Side, P = Par.), which one or more of them--

1. Is underscored? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Is preceded by a triple space? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Is followed by a double space? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Is followed by a period, with ms. continuing on the same line? \_\_\_\_\_

The first three levels in an outline use Roman numbers, capital letters, and arabic numbers, like this:

- I. Centered head
  - A. Side head
    - 1. Paragraph head

In a report, type a Roman-numbered item in an outline as a \_\_\_\_\_ head; type a capital letter outline item as a \_\_\_\_\_ head; type an arabic-numbered outline item as a \_\_\_\_\_ head.

- |    |         |   |
|----|---------|---|
| 1. | S and P | C |
| 2. | C and S | S |
| 3. | C and S | P |
| 4. | P       |   |

If you are typing on even-numbered lines, triple spacing to a new side or \_\_\_\_\_ heading will put you on an odd-numbered line. Depending on the headings on any ms. page, you could be changing a number of times between odd- and even-numbered lines. SO: you will not necessarily end each page on line 60. To avoid typing below line 60, an odd-numbered last line would be line \_\_\_\_\_.

The extra blank lines (before some headings) also mean that you cannot check your closeness to the bottom by counting 27 typed lines. Instead, roll the paper backwards and look to see how much space remains. Or use a ruler and stop when the distance from the top edge of the page is \_\_\_\_\_ inches. Or watch for your light pencil line drawn about \_\_\_\_\_ inches from the bottom edge.

centered  
59  
10  
1½

Because headings on a ms. page could move you back and forth between odd- and even-numbered lines, you have a choice for the starting line on each page. Assuming an unbound ms., you could start each page on line 7 and end either on line 59 or line 60; or you could start one line lower, on line \_\_\_\_\_, and end either on line \_\_\_\_\_ or line \_\_\_\_\_. But no matter what appears on a ms. page, the first line on all pages should be the same: either line \_\_\_\_\_ or line \_\_\_\_\_.\*

\*Except on page 1 when it contains the report title and except in top-bound reports, which start lower down.

Now a little TEST.

14-27

8  
59  
60  
7  
8

Report Writing

I. Unbound Mss.

- A. Side Margins
- B. Vertical Margins

II. Bound Mss.

- A. Side Bound
  - 1. Short
  - 2. Long

Note. Use C (Centered), S (Side), P (Par.), DS (double spacing), and TS (triple spacing).

- 1. IIA would be typed as a \_\_\_\_ head. Before it, you \_\_\_\_; after it, use \_\_\_\_\_. Is it underscored? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. Heading II would be a \_\_\_\_ head. Before it, you \_\_\_\_; after it; use \_\_\_\_\_. Is it underscored? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. IIA2 would be a \_\_\_\_ head. Before it, you \_\_\_\_\_. Is it underscored? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Ms. would continue on the same line after \_\_\_\_\_ (IA/IIA1)

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

14-28

- 1. S  
TS  
DS  
yes
- 2. C  
TS  
DS  
no
- 3. P  
DS  
yes
- 4. IIA1

In a formal report, the sources of the facts or information presented are usually given in footnotes.<sup>1</sup> These are numbered serially<sup>2</sup> and typed at the bottom of the page. As shown below, each footnote is typed in \_\_\_\_\_ spacing; between footnotes, there is a \_\_\_\_\_ space. Just above the footnotes is a divider line. It consists of 10 (or 15 or 20) strokes of the \_\_\_\_\_ key. (what?)

<sup>1</sup>See any typewriting textbook or style manual for information on the content of footnotes.

<sup>2</sup>In 1-2-3 order.

14-29

single  
double  
underscore

The serial numbering of footnotes applies throughout a report. You do not start with number 1 on each new page. If there is one footnote on page 1, two on page 6, and one on page 8, the footnote on page 8 will be number \_\_\_\_\_. Since all ms. pages should use a bottom margin of 1 inch, on any page containing footnotes the last line of the last footnote should be on line no. \_\_\_\_\_.

<sup>1</sup>A footnote belonging to a page must be begun on that page, but not necessarily finished. A long footnote might have to be continued at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the next page. (top/bottom)

4  
60  
bottom

14-30

Assume these to be the  
last lines on a page. 53

|                               |   |    |
|-------------------------------|---|----|
| _____ ←                       | 1 | 54 |
| <sup>1</sup> Footnotes take   | 2 | 55 |
| paragraph indention.          | 3 | 56 |
| <sup>2</sup> Footnote numbers | 4 | 57 |
| are raised a half line.       | 5 | 58 |
|                               | 6 | 59 |
|                               | 7 | 60 |

To end the last footnote on line 60, you MUST estimate in advance how many lines will be needed for footnotes--INCLUDING BLANK LINES AND THE DIVIDER LINE. To find the last possible line of ms. (before the divider), subtract the footnote total from 60.

As shown by the line count above, the footnotes require (from divider line to last line) \_\_\_\_\_ lines. To leave enough room for them, the typing that precedes the footnotes must end no lower on the page than line \_\_\_\_\_.

7  
53

14-31

In counting footnote lines, the divider line counts as 1 line and the blank line after it counts as a second line. After that, just count lines of typing in the footnotes (including a blank line between footnotes). In Frame 14 - 28 (refer to it), the footnotes use \_\_\_\_\_ lines. If some page had three footnotes, using, in turn, 1, 3, and 2 typed lines, the total needed for footnote lines (including all blank lines and the divider line) would be \_\_\_\_\_. On that page, the last line of ms. preceding the footnotes could not be lower than line no. \_\_\_\_\_.

6  
10  
50 (60 - 10)

14-32

In Frame 14-30 (refer to it), the divider line is a single line below the last ms. line on line 53; it is on line \_\_\_\_\_. If the ms. typing had been on even-numbered lines, to keep the divider line on line 54 (where it MUST be in order to end the footnotes on line 60), the last line of ms. on that page would have to be line \_\_\_\_\_. After it, to reach line 54, you would \_\_\_\_\_ space down.  
(single/double/triple)

54  
52  
double

14-33

To locate the last possible ms. line, you could subtract the number of footnote lines from 60. But a safer method is to locate the divider line position by subtracting from 61. The footnotes in Frame 14-28 (refer to it) contain \_\_\_\_\_ lines. The divider line before the footnotes should be on line \_\_\_\_\_. If the ms. typing were on odd-numbered lines, the last ms. line would be no. \_\_\_\_\_; if on even-numbered lines, the last ms. line would be no. \_\_\_\_\_, and you would \_\_\_\_\_ space down to the divider line.  
(single/double)

6  
55  
53  
54  
single

14-34

The first row of the table below shows that for two footnotes (containing 1 and 2 typed lines), 6 lines of footnote space are required, placing the divider on line 55. Fill in the blanks in the table.

|    | <u>Typed Footnote Lines</u> | <u>Total Footnote Lines</u> | <u>Divider Line on Line No.</u> |
|----|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a. | 1, 2                        | <u>6</u>                    | <u>55</u>                       |
| b. | 4                           | _____                       | _____                           |
| c. | 2, 2, 3                     | _____                       | _____                           |
| d. | 2, 4                        | _____                       | _____                           |
| e. | 1, 1, 3                     | _____                       | _____                           |
| f. | 2, 1, 3                     | _____                       | _____                           |

b. 6 55  
c. 11 50  
d. 9 52  
e. 9 52  
f. 10 51

14-35

As you reach each footnote sign during your typing of a ms. page, make a note of how many typed lines the footnote will require. In that way, you can determine when to stop the ms. typing and start the footnotes. If you underestimate the space needed for footnotes, you will fall below line \_\_\_\_\_ (or will have to carry part of the last footnote over to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the next page). If you overestimate, your bottom margin will be \_\_\_\_\_ than 1 inch.  
(top/bottom) (more/less)

60  
bottom  
more

Assume that some very brief report uses only half a page or that the last page in a longer report is only half full. Assume also that that page contains one or more footnotes. Those footnotes still appear at the bottom of the page, ending on line 60--not a line or two below the last typed ms. line on that page. Even if the final ms. line were, say, on line 20 on that page, if there were one 1-line footnote and one 3-line footnote, the divider line should be typed on line \_\_\_\_\_, and the footnotes should end on line \_\_\_\_\_.

54 (61 - 7)  
60

Now a little TEST. . . . .  
\_\_\_\_\_ The footnotes at the left use \_\_\_\_\_ lines.  
1 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx The divider should be on line \_\_\_\_\_.  
xxxxxxxxxxxxx  
2 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx The last odd-numbered ms. line before  
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx the footnotes would be no. \_\_\_\_\_, fol-  
xxxxxxxxx lowed by a \_\_\_\_\_ space to the  
3 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx divider line. The last even-numbered  
xxxxxxxxx line before the footnotes would be no.  
\_\_\_\_\_, followed by a \_\_\_\_\_ space  
to the divider line.

[This frame makes a convenient stopping point.]

11  
50 (61 - 11)  
49  
single  
48  
double

There are many ways to show references in footnotes. One widely used style is illustrated below.  
1 Fred L. Clark. Style Manual for Typists. New York: Claremont Press, 1970.  
2 Arthur Morrison. Ten Typing Tips. Office Monthly, (Feb.) 1970, 20, 15-17.  
Footnote references contain, in order: author, title, publication information.  
Book titles (footnote 1) and magazine or journal titles (footnote 2) are \_\_\_\_\_. The journal (in quotes/underscored) volume number appears after the year of publication and is also \_\_\_\_\_.



underscored  
underscored

Now a little TEST (based on Frame 14-38). . . . . .

(Refer to the preceding frame.)

1. In a footnote reference, the author's name is given \_\_\_\_\_ first.  
(first name/last name)
2. The city of publication and the name of the publisher are given in a reference to a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(book/journal article)
3. Mr. Morrison's article begins on page 15 and ends on page \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The punctuation mark that follows each of the three main sections (author, title, publication information) is a \_\_\_\_\_.

TEST continued. . . . . .

(Use Frame 38 as a model and be careful about punctuation.)

1. first name
2. book
3. 17
4. period

As footnote 3, write below a reference to a book entitled "Know Your Typewriter" by David Kent, published in 1968 by Rand & Sims, located in Chicago.

Assume that Mr. Kent's work was an article published on pages 11 to 15 of the March 1968 issue (volume 9) of "Office Machines." As Foot. 4, write a reference for it below.

<sup>3</sup> David Kent. Know Your Typewriter. Chicago: Rand & Sims, 1968.

<sup>4</sup> David Kent. Know Your Typewriter. Office Machines. (Mar.) 1968, 9, 11-15.